

---

This is a reproduction of a library book that was digitized by Google as part of an ongoing effort to preserve the information in books and make it universally accessible.

Google™ books

<https://books.google.com>





WORKS PUBLISHED BY THE  
**Catholic Publishing & Bookselling Company,**  
LIMITED.

---

Recently published,

**A New English Grammar**, calculated to perfect Students in the knowledge of Grammar, Parsing, Derivation, and the Principles of Composition. By M. D. KAVANAGH, of University College, London. 16mo. bound, 1s.

Just published, price 1s. 6d.,

**A New Latin Grammar**, calculated to perfect Students in Etymology, Syntax (including Subjunctive Mood), Principles of Prose Composition, and Prosody. By M. D. KAVANAGH, Author of "New English Grammar," &c.

**Arithmetic, its Principles and Practice.** By James W. KAVANAGH, late Head Inspector of National Schools, Ireland. Fifth edition, revised and enlarged. Price 2s., free by post 2s. 2d. On list of Books approved by Committee of Privy Council on Education in England; adopted in the Catholic University, and in the leading Catholic Colleges and Schools.

Just published, price 4s. 6d.

**Public Lectures on some Subjects of Ancient and Modern History**, delivered before the Catholic University of Ireland. By JAMES BURTON ROBERTSON, Esq., Professor of Modern History, Translator of F. Schlegel's "Philosophy of History," and of Moehler's "Symbolism."

Recently published,

**The Physical and Historical Geography of the British Empire.** In Four Parts. A new and greatly-improved edition. By D. C. MACCARTHY, Certificated Teacher. The Colonial Geography occupies forty-four pages, and with other improvements, a new and copious Alphabetical Index has been added. 336 pp. 8vo. Price 2s. 6d.

"Your excellent geography."—*The Cardinal Archbishop of Westminster.*

**Ancient History, from the Dispersion of the Sons of Noe to the Battle of Actium and Change of the Roman Republic into an Empire.** By PETER FREDET, D.D., Professor of History in St. Mary's College, Baltimore. Fifth edition, carefully revised and enlarged, half-bound, leather back, 12mo. 4s.

**Modern History, from the Coming of Christ, and the Change of the Roman Republic into an Empire, to the year of our Lord 1850.** By [Name obscured], Professor of History in St. Mary's College, Baltimore. [Name obscured] enlarged and improved, half-bound, leather back, 12mo. 4s.

**A Compendium of Ancient and Modern History**, with Questions, adapted to the use of Schools and Academies; also, an Appendix, containing the Declaration of Independence, the Constitution of the United States, a Biographical Sketch of Eminent Personages, with a Chronological Table of Remarkable Events, Discoveries, Improvements, &c., from the Creation to the year 1850. By M. I. KERNEY. Tenth edition, large 12mo. half-bound, 4s. 6d.

---

### **Dolman's Catechisms.**

**Catechism of the History of England.** 6d.

**Catechism of the History of France.** 6d.

**Catechism of the History of Germany.** By A. M. 18mo. 6d.

"It is Catholic, extremely well-condensed, lucid, and full enough for the purpose of an introductory outline."—*Tablet*.

**Catechism of Spain and Portugal.** 6d.

**Catechism of Mythology.** By R. O. 18mo. 6d.

N.B.—These Catechisms, being all written by Catholics, can be safely recommended for the use of Schools.

---

**Gaume (Abbe). Paganism in Education.** From the French of "Le Ver Rongeur des Sociétés Modernes." Translated by ROBERT HILL, Esq. Cloth, 2s.

**Juvenile Companion to the Atlas**, with some Historical Notes. 18mo. cloth, 1s. 6d.

**Reading Lessons for the Use of Schools: a New Series**, from Words of Two Syllables upwards; in tablet form. By a Catholic Clergyman. Fifty-six Lessons, 2s. 6d. the set.

**Catechisms. — Abridgment of Christian Doctrine.** Illustrated with Woodcuts. 1d.

Douay, or Second Catechism, 1½d.; Catechism for Confirmation, 1d.; First Communicants', 2d.; Fleury's Short Historical Catechism, 1d.

**Catechism (The), or Christian Doctrine; by way of Question and Answer.** Illustrated by the Sacred Text and Tradition. Composed by the Rev. A. CLINTON. 24mo. bound, 1s.

**Irish made Easy; or, a Practical Irish Grammar.** By the Author of "O'Brennan's Ireland." 12mo. 2s.

## NEW WORKS AND EDITIONS.

**Tyborne, and who went thither in the Days of Queen Elizabeth : a Sketch.** By the Authoress of "Eastern Hospitals and English Nurses." 3s.

Just published, price 4s. 6d.,

**Memories of Rome.** By Denis O'Donovan, Esq.

Just published, price 1s.,

**The Catholic in the Workhouse.** Popular Statement of the Law as it affects him ; the Grievances it occasions : with Practical Suggestions for Redress. By CHARLES A. RUSSELL, Esq., Barrister-at-Law.

Just published, price 6d.,

**An Unlooked-for Conversion.** By H. P. S., late Brother of the Little Oratory.

Just published, price 7s.,

**Ceremonial according to the Roman Rite ; translated from the Italian of Joseph Baldeschi, Master of Ceremonies of the Basilica of St. Peter at Rome, with the Pontifical Offices of a Bishop in his own diocese, compiled from the " Ceremoniale Episcoporum ;" to which are added various other Functions and copious Explanatory Notes ; the whole harmonized with the latest Decrees of the Sacred Congregation of Rites.** By the Rev. J. D. HILARIUS DALE. New edition, revised, 8vo.

Just published, neatly bound in cloth, price 1s.,

**Gems from Catholic Poets, with several Portraits and a Biographical and Literary Introduction.** By JAMES BURKE, Esq., Barrister-at-Law.

Just published, price 4s. 6d.,

**The Roman Catacombs ; or, some Account of the Burial-places of the Early Christians in Rome.** By the Rev. J. SPENCER NORTHCOTE, M.A. Second edition, with considerable additions both in matter and illustrations, and the whole re-arranged.

At Press,

**The Life of Cardinal Ximenes, translated from the German of Hefele.** By the Rev. JOHN DALTON.

Nearly ready,

**May Templeton : a Tale of Faith and Love.** By the Authoress of " Eastern Hospitals and English Nurses."

At Press,

**The Queens and Princesses of France.** By G. WHITE, Esq.

Preparing for publication,

**Celtic Legends in Ireland, Wales and Brittany ; being those relating to SS. Patrick, Kadok, and Hervé.** From the French of the Vicomte Hersart de la Villemarqué.

A NEW  
LATIN GRAMMAR,

CALCULATED

TO PERFECT STUDENTS IN

ETYMOLOGY, SYNTAX (INCLUDING SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD),  
THE PRINCIPLES OF PROSE COMPOSITION,  
AND PROSODY.

BY

M. D. KAVANAGH,

AUTHOR OF "NEW ENGLISH GRAMMAR," ETC.

LONDON:

Catholic Publishing & Bookselling Company, Limited,

CHARLES DOLMAN, MANAGER,

61, NEW BOND STREET, & 6, QUEEN'S HEAD PASSAGE

PATERNOSTER ROW.

1859.



## PREFACE.

---

WHEN the number and variety of Latin Grammars already published are considered, a new production of a similar kind seems to require an apology ; but elementary works clearly and concisely written and methodically arranged are treasures of incalculable value, and too many attempts cannot be made to render them perfect and complete. From these considerations, I have been induced to compile a New Latin Grammar ; in preparing which, it has been my special object to secure perfect accuracy, to supply defects, and to adapt the work to the minds of beginners, as well as of those who are more advanced.

According to the system adopted in this Grammar, in Etymology the parts of speech are distinctly and concisely defined ; the rules on the declensions and genders of nouns are next given, together with appropriate examples to illustrate them. Each declension is followed by Exercises for the use of the student, in order to impress the principles on his memory.



A new method, on the Formation of Tenses, has been introduced, by which the student, in a few lessons, will become thoroughly acquainted not only with the prescribed conjugations, but with all the verbs in the Latin language. The quantity of syllables has been carefully and systematically marked.

The part on Syntax is constructed on the basis of Zumpt's Syntax, incorporated with Arnold's, and other works of erudition and perfection.

M. D. KAVANAGH,

*Author of the "New English Grammar," etc.*

23, CHURCH-ROW, HAMPSTEAD,

May, 1859.

# CONTENTS.

---

DIVISIONS OF GRAMMAR .....	Page 1
----------------------------	--------

## Part I.—Orthography.

Letters—Syllables .....	ib.
-------------------------	-----

## Part II.—Etymology.

Parts of Speech .....	2
Definition of Parts of Speech .....	3
Nouns Substantive .....	4
Genders—Numbers—Cases .....	ib.
Explanation of the Cases .....	5
Declension of Nouns Substantive—Rules—Notes—Exercises ....	6
Irregular Declensions—Indeclinable Substantives .....	15
Declension of Nouns Adjective—Rules—Notes—Exercises .....	17
General Rules of Adjectives .....	23
Comparison of Adjectives .....	24
Pronouns .....	27
Declension of Pronouns .....	28
Verbs .....	31
Moods—Tenses .....	33
Gerunds—Supines .....	34
Participles—Numbers and Persons of Verbs .....	35

Formation of Tenses .....	Page 35
Conjugation of the verb <i>Esse</i> .....	42
Declension of Verbs Regular—Active Voice .....	46
Conjugation of ditto .....	<i>ib.</i>
Declension of Verbs Regular—Passive Voice .....	65
Conjugation of ditto .....	<i>ib.</i>
Deponent Verbs .....	82
Declension of Verbs Irregular .....	83
Conjugation of ditto .....	<i>ib.</i>
Defective Verbs .....	102
Impersonal Verbs .....	105
List of Irregular Verbs .....	106
List of Irregular Deponent Verbs .....	113
List of Verbs which, though the same in form, differ in meaning	115
Remarks on the Terminations of Verbs .....	116
Adverbs .....	<i>ib.</i>
Conjunctions .....	117
Prepositions .....	118
Interjections .....	120

### Part III.—Syntax.

Agreement of the Subject and Predicate .....	121
Accusative with Infinitive .....	123
Agreement of the Adjective with its Substantive .....	124
The Relative .....	125
Pronouns .....	128
The Nominative Case (Apposition) .....	132
Nominative after Verbs (Attraction of the Predicate) .....	133
The Genitive Case .....	135
The Genitive after Adjectives .....	138
The Genitive after Verbs .....	139

The Dative Case .....	<i>Page</i> 141
The Dative after Adjectives .....	142
The Dative after Verbs .....	<i>ib.</i>
The Accusative Case .....	146
The Vocative Case .....	149
The Ablative Case .....	150
Division and Connection of the Tenses.....	155
The Moods—Indicative Mood .....	156
Imperative Mood.....	157
Subjunctive Mood .....	158
Gerunds and the Participles in <i>dus</i> (Gerundive).....	165
Supines .....	167
Participles .....	168

#### Part IV.—Prosody.

General Rules .....	170
Derivative Words .....	171
Final Syllables.....	172
Metre .....	174
Scanning .....	175



# L A T I N   G R A M M A R.

---

L A T I N G R A M M A R is the art of speaking and writing the Latin language correctly.

## DIVISIONS OF GRAMMAR.

Latin Grammar is divided into four parts; namely, Orthography, Etymology, Syntax, and Prosody.

## DIVISIONS OF GRAMMAR DEFINED.

Orthography treats of the nature and powers of letters, and of the just method of combining them into syllables and words.

Etymology treats of the different sorts of words, and the changes which they undergo.

Syntax treats of the union and right order of words in a sentence.

Prosody treats of the just pronunciation and poetical construction of a sentence.

---

## PART I.—ORTHOGRAPHY.

### LETTERS—SYLLABLES.

A Letter is a mark or character used in writing words.

The Latin and the English Alphabet are the same, except that in Latin there is no *w*; and *k* is found only

in proper names, most of which are derived from the Greek ; as, *Kalendæ*.

Letters are divided into vowels and consonants.

A Vowel makes a full and perfect sound of itself, as *e*.  
The Vowels are *a, e, i, o, u, y*.

A Consonant cannot be distinctly sounded without a vowel ; as, *b*, pronounced as *be*.

Consonants are divided into Mutes and Semivowels.

The Semivowels are *f, l, m, n, r, s, v*; of which, *l, m, n, r* are called liquids, from their easily uniting with other consonants.

The Double Consonants are *x* and *z*.

The remaining letters are called Mutes, because they cannot be sounded at all without the aid of a vowel.

A Diphthong is the union of two vowels in one sound.

There are six diphthongs,—*ae, ai, au, ei, eu, oe*.

The diphthongs *ae* and *oe* are often joined and written thus, *æ, œ*.

A Syllable is as much of a word as can be uttered, by the help of one vowel, by a single impulse of the voice.

Every syllable is either long (ˉ) or short (˘) in quantity, according to the time supposed to be employed in pronouncing it.

## PART II.—ETYMOLOGY.

Etymology treats of the different sorts of words or parts of speech, and the changes which they undergo.

### PARTS OF SPEECH.

In Latin there are eight parts of speech ; namely, Noun, Pronoun, Verb, Participle, declined ; Adverb, Conjunction, Preposition, Interjection, undeclined.

PARTS OF SPEECH DEFINED.

A Noun is the name of anything that exists, or of which we have any idea or notion ; as, *vir*, 'a man ;' *mensa*, 'a table ;' *sapientia*, 'wisdom.'

Nouns are of two kinds, Substantives and Adjectives.

A *Noun Substantive* expresses by itself alone the object of which we are speaking ; as, *vir*, 'a man.'

A *Noun Adjective* always requires to be joined to a substantive, of which it expresses its quality, number, or some circumstance respecting it ; as, *bonus vir*, 'a good man ;' *alta mensa*, 'a high table.'

A Pronoun is a word used for, or instead of, a noun, to avoid the too frequent repetition of a noun ; as, *Mater filium amat, et ad eum multas epistolas scripsit*—'The mother loved her son, and wrote to him many letters.'

A Verb is a word which signifies action, or the doing of something. All words which show what persons do, or what is done to them, are verbs ; as, *Amo*, 'I love ;' *amor*, 'I am loved.'

A Participle is a word which represents the state in which a person or thing is ; as, *furens fœmina*, 'a woman raging.'

A participle partakes both of the nature of a verb and an adjective.

An Adverb is a word joined to verbs, adjectives, and nouns (and sometimes to other adverbs), to express some quality or circumstance respecting them ; as, *Scribit bene*, 'He writes well ;' *Scribit male*, 'He writes badly.'

A Conjunction is a word which joins words or sentences together ; as, *Puer et puella*, 'boy and girl ;' *pueri aut puellæ*, 'boys or girls.'

A Preposition is a word which shows the relation of one person or thing to another ; as, *Ad eum venit*, 'He came to him ;' *ð domo*, 'from home.'

An Interjection is a word which betokens surprise,



sudden emotion, or some feeling of the mind ; as, *O fallacem hominum spem*, 'O deceitful hope of men.'

---

## NOUNS SUBSTANTIVE.

Nouns are divided into Proper and Common.

A Proper noun is a name which distinguishes one person or thing from others of the same species ; as, *Jacobus*, 'James ;' *Britannia*, 'Britain.'

A Common noun is a name which can be applied to a whole class of the same species ; as, *vir*, 'a man ;' *mons*, 'a mountain.'

To nouns belong Gender, Number, Case, and Declension.

### GENDERS.

Gender is the distinction of sex.

There are three genders,—the Masculine, the Feminine, and the Neuter.

The names of men and of male beings are of the masculine gender.

The names of women and of female beings are of the feminine gender.

Words denoting an office or quality, as *auctor*, 'an author,' which may belong either to man or woman, are both masculine and feminine.

Of the names of animals, some are Common, some Epicene, and some of Uncertain gender.

Those are called Common which are used as masculines when the male is spoken of, and feminines when the female is spoken of ; as, *hic bos*, 'this ox ;' *hæc bos*, 'this cow.'

Those are called Epicene which have only one grammatical gender, which comprehends both sexes ; as, *hic passer*, 'this sparrow ;' *hæc aquila*, 'this eagle.'

Those are called Uncertain which are used either as masculines or feminines, without regard to sex ; as, *hic* or *hæc anguis*, 'this snake.'

All indeclinable nouns, in the singular or plural, belong to the neuter gender.

## NUMBERS.

Number means the change of termination to signify more than one.

Nouns have two numbers, — the Singular and the Plural.

The Singular number denotes one of any kind, or unity of idea ; as, *vir*, 'a man ;' *exercitus*, 'an army.'

The Plural Number denotes more things than one, or plurality of idea ; as, *viri*, 'men ;' *exercitus*, 'armies.'

## CASES.

The Case of a noun signifies its different terminations, which serve to express the relation of one thing to another.

There are six cases, or endings, — the Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Vocative, Ablative.

---

## EXPLANATION OF THE CASES.

The Nominative case simply expresses the name of a thing, or the subject of a verb ; as, *Puer ridet*, 'The boy laughs.' It may be known by its answering to the question 'Who?' or 'What?'

The Genitive case expresses the possessor or ownership of something ; as, *Mei patris domus*, 'My father's house.' It may be known by its answering to the question 'Whose?' or 'Whereof?'

The Dative case signifies the person to whom anything

is given ; as, *Rex filio coronam dedit*, 'The king gave the crown to his son.'

It may be known by its answering to the question 'Unto whom?'

The Accusative case expresses the receiver of an action, or the object of a verb ; as, *Pater suum filium cecidit*, 'The father beat his son.'

It may be known by its answering to the question 'Whom?' or 'What?'

The Vocative case is used in addressing a person or thing ; as, *O doctor!* 'O doctor!'

The Ablative case denotes the person or thing from whom or from which anything is taken ; as, *Carcere liberatus est*, 'He was liberated from prison.'

It may be known by the signs 'in' (signifying rest), 'with,' 'from,' 'by.'

### DECLENSION OF NOUNS SUBSTANTIVE.

Declension is the deriving of different cases from one another.

There are five declensions, which are distinguished by the ending of the genitive case singular.

The first declension makes the genitive case singular to end in *æ*.

The second declension makes the genitive case singular to end in *ī*.

The third declension makes the genitive case singular to end in *īs*.

The fourth declension makes the genitive case singular to end in *ūs*.

The fifth declension makes the genitive case singular to end in *ei*.

The vocative is like the nominative, except in masculine and feminine words of the second declension.

The dative and ablative plural are the same in all the declensions.

FIRST DECLENSION.

The first declension makes the genitive case singular to end in *æ* diphthong.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. <i>Rōs-ă</i> , a rose.	Nom. <i>Rōs-æ</i> , roses.
Gen. <i>Rōs-æ</i> , of a rose.	Gen. <i>Rōs-ărŭm</i> , of roses.
Dat. <i>Rōs-æ</i> , to a rose.	Dat. <i>Rōs-īs</i> , to roses.
Acc. <i>Rōs-ăm</i> , a rose.	Acc. <i>Rōs-ās</i> , roses.
Voc. <i>Rōs-ă</i> , O rose.	Voc. <i>Rōs-æ</i> , O roses.
Abl. <i>Rōs-ă</i> , from a rose.	Abl. <i>Rōs-īs</i> , from roses.

*Note 1.*—The first declension has four terminations,—*a*, *e*, *as*, and *es*; but *a* is the only Latin termination.

*Note 2.*—The diphthong *æ* is always long at the end of a word, in prose.

*Note 3.*—*Familia* makes *familias* in the genitive case singular when compounded with *mater* and *pater*.

*Note 4.*—The poets make the genitive singular in *ăi* for *æ*; as, *aulăi*, *pictăi*.

*Note 5.*—The following make the dative and ablative plural to end in *abus* instead of *is*:—*Dea*, *filia*, *nata*, *equa*, *mula*, *liberta*.

*Gender of Nouns of the First Declension.*

Nouns ending in *a* are feminine, except the names of persons,—as, *poeta*, *scriba*, &c., which are masculine.

EXERCISES.

Decline the following nouns of the first declension:—

- |                               |                                    |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Via</i> , the way.      | 3. <i>Lana</i> , wool.             |
| 2. <i>Filia</i> , a daughter. | 4. <i>Liberta</i> , a freed woman. |

## SECOND DECLENSION.

The second declension makes the genitive case singular to end in *ī*.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. <i>Pŭēr</i> , a boy.	Nom. <i>Pŭēr-ī</i> , boys.
Gen. <i>Pŭēr-ī</i> , of a boy.	Gen. <i>Pŭēr-ōrŭm</i> , of boys.
Dat. <i>Pŭēr-ō</i> , to a boy.	Dat. <i>Pŭēr-is</i> , to boys.
Acc. <i>Pŭēr-ŭm</i> , a boy.	Acc. <i>Pŭēr-ōs</i> , boys.
Voc. <i>Pŭēr</i> , O boy.	Voc. <i>Pŭēr-ī</i> , O boys.
Abl. <i>Pŭēr-ō</i> , from a boy.	Abl. <i>Pŭēr-is</i> , from boys.

*Note.* — Nouns ending in *er* for the most drop the *e* in the genitive, and all the cases derived from it ; except *magister* and a few others, which retain the *e* throughout the whole of their cases.

Nouns of the Second Declension ending in *us* make the vocative singular to end in *e* ; as,

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. <i>Dŏmīn-ŭs</i> , a master.	N. <i>Dŏmīn-ī</i> , masters.
G. <i>Dŏmīn-ī</i> , of a master.	G. <i>Dŏmīn-ōrŭm</i> , of masters.
D. <i>Dŏmīn-ō</i> , to a master.	D. <i>Dŏmīn-is</i> , to masters.
A. <i>Dŏmīn-ŭm</i> , a master.	A. <i>Dŏmīn-ōs</i> , masters.
V. <i>Dŏmīn-e</i> , O master.	V. <i>Dŏmīn-ī</i> , O masters.
A. <i>Dŏmīn-ō</i> , from a master.	A. <i>Dŏmīn-is</i> , from masters.

*Note.* — Proper names ending in *ŭs*, as *Gēorgŭs*, George, &c., make the vocative singular to end in *ī* ; as, *Georgius*, *Georgī*. Also *filŭs*, a son, and *gēnŭs*, a genius, make the vocative in *ī* ; as, *filī*, *genī*. *Dēus*, God, makes *O Deus*, O God, in the vocative singular.

Nouns ending in *um* make the nominative, accusative, and the vocative cases alike in both numbers ; and those cases in the plural number end all in *a* ; as,

*Singular.*

Nom.	<i>Fōlī-ūm</i> , a leaf.
Gen.	<i>Fōlī-ī</i> , of a leaf.
Dat.	<i>Fōlī-ō</i> , to a leaf.
Acc.	<i>Fōlī-ūm</i> , a leaf.
Voc.	<i>Fōlī-ūm</i> , O leaf.
Abl.	<i>Fōlī-ō</i> , from a leaf.

*Plural.*

Nom.	<i>Fōlī-ā</i> , leaves.
Gen.	<i>Fōlī-ōrūm</i> , of leaves.
Dat.	<i>Fōlī-īs</i> , to leaves.
Acc.	<i>Fōlī-ā</i> , leaves.
Voc.	<i>Fōlī-ā</i> , O leaves.
Abl.	<i>Fōlī-īs</i> , from leaves.

*Note.*—The second declension has nine terminations ; but there are only six Latin terminations.

*Gender of Nouns of the Second Declension.*

Nouns ending in *us*, *er*, *ir*, are for the most of the masculine gender, and those in *um* are of the neuter gender.

EXERCISES.

Decline the following nouns of the second declension :—

- |                                    |                               |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Magister</i> , a master.     | 4. <i>Animus</i> , the mind.  |
| 2. <i>Socer</i> , a father-in-law. | 5. <i>Filius</i> , a son.     |
| 3. <i>Liber</i> , a book.          | 6. <i>Regnum</i> , a kingdom. |

THIRD DECLENSION.

The Third Declension makes the genitive case singular to end in *īs*.

This declension has so many terminations that they are divided into vowels and consonants. The nominative of the vowels ends in *a*, *e*, *i*, *y*, *o* (of which *a*, *i*, and *y* are of Greek origin). The nominative of the consonants ends in *c*, *l*, *n*, *r*, *s*, and *x*.

Nouns of the third declension form their genitives as follows :—

1. Nouns ending in *a* make *ātis* ; as *poēma*, *poemātis*.
2. Nouns ending in *e* change *e* into *īs* ; as, *mārē*, *mārīs*.

3. Nouns ending in *i* and *y* are, for the most part, indeclinable.
4. Nouns ending in *o* (common) add *nis* for the genitive ; as, *sermo*, *sermonis*.

All words in *io*, as *pugio*, &c., make *ō* long in the genitive ; as, *pugio*, *pugiōnis*. Most names of nations have *ō* short ; as, *Macedo*, *Macedōnis* ; *Lacōnes* and *Iōnes* being excepted. All names of qualities in *do*, and most words in *go*, change *o* into *ī* short, as also *homo*, and a few others ; as, *virgo*, *virgīnis* ; *hirundo*, *hirundīnis* ; *homo*, *homīnis*. *Caro* makes *carnis*.

5. Of nouns ending in *c* there are only two : *alec*, *alēcis* ; and *lac*, *lactis*.
6. Nouns ending in *l* add *is* to the nominative ; as, *sol*, *sōlis*. *Mel* makes *mellis*.
7. Nouns ending in *ēn*, and of the neuter gender, make *īnis* ; those in *ēn* make *ēnis* ; as, *carmēn*, *carmīnis* ; *rēn*, *rēnis*.
8. Nouns ending in *ar*.—Some make *āris*, and some *āris* ; as, *calcar*, *calcāris* ; *Cæsar*, *Cæsāris*.
9. Nouns ending in *ēr*.—Some make *ēris* ; as, *later*, *latēris* ; and some reject the *e* ; as, *pater*, *patris*. *Iter* makes *itineris* ; *ver*, *vēris* ; *Jupiter*, *Jovis*.
10. Nouns ending in *or*.—Some make *ōris*, and some *ōris* ; as, *soror*, *sorōris* ; *memor*, *memōris*.
11. Nouns ending in *ur*.—Some make *ūris*, and some *ōris* ; as, *fulgur*, *fulgūris* ; *ebur*, *ebōris*.
12. Nouns ending in *as* make *ātis* ; as, *ætās*, *ætātis*. *Mas* makes *māris* ; *vas*, ‘a surety,’ *vādīs* ; *vas*, ‘a vessel,’ *vāsīs*.
13. Nouns ending in *es* form their genitives in different ways ; some change *es* into *is*, as *clades*, &c.

Some make *itis*, as *comes*, &c. ; some make *ētis*, as *seges*, &c. ; some make *ētis*, as *quies*, &c. ; some make *īdis*, as *obses* ; some *ēdis*, as *pes* and its compounds ; some make *ēdis*, as *merces*.

14. Nouns ending in *is* have generally *is* in the genitive without increase. Some, however, increase, and make *īdis*, *ītis*, or *ēris* ; as, *lapis*, *lapīdis* ; *lis*, *lītis* ; *pulvis*, *pulvērīs*.
15. Nouns ending in *os* make *ōtis* ; as, *cōs*, *cōtis*. *Custos* makes *custōdis* ; *bos*, *bōvis*.
16. Nouns ending in *us*, which are feminine, make *ūtis*, except *tellus*, 'the earth,' which makes *tellūris*.

Nouns ending in *us*, which are neuter.—Some make *ēris*, and some *ōris* ; as, *olus*, *olēris* ; *tempus*, *tempōris*. Nouns of one syllable, ending in *ū* long, with a few exceptions, form the genitive in *ūris* ; as, *crus*, *crūrīs*.

17. Nouns ending in *aus* change *s* into *dis* ; as, *laus*, *laudīs*.
18. Nouns ending in *ls*, *ns*, *rs* ; change *s* into *tis* ; as *frons*, *frontis* ; *pars*, *partis*. Those in *bs* make *bis* ; as, *trabs*, *trābis* ; those in *ms* make *mis* ; as, *hiems*, *hiēmīs*.
19. There is only one noun and its compounds ending in *t*, which is *capūt* ; and it makes *capītis*.
20. Words of one syllable, with a consonant preceding *x*, make the genitive in *cis* ; as, *arx*, *arcīs*.
21. Nouns ending in *ax* make *ācis* ; as, *pax*, *pācis* ; but *fax*, and some Greek words, make *ācis*. Those in *ex* make *īcis* ; as, *judex*, *judīcis* ; but *vibex* make *ribīcis* ; *rex*, *rēgis* ; *grex*, *grēgis* ; *senex*, *senīs* ; *supellex*, *supellectīlis*.
22. Nouns ending in *ix* make *īcis* or *īcis* ; as, *calix*,



*calicis* ; *radix, radicis*. *Nix* makes *nivis* ; *strix, strigis*.

23. Nouns ending in *ox* make *ōcis* ; as, *vox, vōcis* : *nox* makes *noctis*.

24. Nouns ending in *ux* make *ūcis* and *ūcis* ; as, *lux, lūcis* ; *dux, dūcis*. *Conjux* makes *conjūgis*.

By means of the above forms of the genitive case, from which all the other cases are derived, the student will be able to decline any noun of the third declension.

### *Singular.*

Nom. *Nūb-ēs*, a cloud.  
Gen. *Nūb-īs*, of a cloud.  
Dat. *Nūb-ī*, to a cloud.  
Acc. *Nūb-ēm*, a cloud.  
Voc. *Nūb-ēs*, O cloud.  
Abl. *Nūb-ē*, from a cloud.

### *Plural.*

Nom. *Nūb-ēs*, clouds.  
Gen. *Nūb-īum*, of clouds.  
Dat. *Nūb-ībūs*, to clouds.  
Acc. *Nūb-ēs*, clouds.  
Voc. *Nūb-ēs*, O clouds.  
Abl. *Nūb-ībūs*, from clouds.

### *Singular.*

Nom. *Lāp-īs*, a stone.  
Gen. *Lāp-īdis*, of a stone.  
Dat. *Lāp-īdi*, to a stone.  
Acc. *Lāp-īdēm*, a stone.  
Voc. *Lāp-īs*, O stone.  
Abl. *Lāp-īdē*, from a stone.

### *Plural.*

Nom. *Lāp-īdēs*, stones.  
Gen. *Lāp-īdūm*, of stones.  
Dat. *Lāp-īdībūs*, to stones.  
Acc. *Lāp-īdēs*, stones.  
Voc. *Lāp-īdēs*, O stones.  
Abl. *Lāp-īdībūs*, from stones.

*Note.*—Nouns ending in *es* and *is*, not increasing in the genitive case, for the most part make the genitive plural to end in *ium*, and not in *um*.

### *Singular.*

N. *Gēn-ūs*, a kindred.  
G. *Gēn-ērīs*, of a kindred.  
D. *Gēn-ērī*, to a kindred.  
A. *Gēn-ūs*, a kindred.  
V. *Gēn-ūs*, O kindred.  
A. *Gēn-ērē*, from a kindred.

### *Plural.*

N. *Gēn-ērā*, kindreds.  
G. *Gēn-ērūm*, of kindreds.  
D. *Gēn-ērībūs*, to kindreds.  
A. *Gēn-ērā*, kindreds.  
V. *Gēn-ērā*, O kindreds !  
A. *Gēn-ērībūs*, from kindreds.

*Gender of Nouns of the Third Declension.*

*Masculines.*

Nouns ending in *o*, *or*, *os*, and *er*, and those in *es* which increase in the genitive, belong, for the most part, to the masculine gender.

*Feminines.*

Nouns ending in *as*, *is*, *ys*, *aus*, and *x*, in *es* not increasing in the genitive, and in *s* preceded by a consonant, belong for the most to the feminine gender.

*Neuters.*

Nouns ending in *a*, *e*, *i*, *y*, *c*, *l*, *n*, *t*, *ar*, *ur*, *us*, belong, for the most part, to the neuter gender.

EXERCISES.

Decline the following nouns of the third declension :—

- |                            |                             |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. <i>Finis</i> , the end. | 5. <i>Corpus</i> , a body.  |
| 2. <i>Mare</i> , the sea.  | 6. <i>Pater</i> , a father. |
| 3. <i>Homo</i> , a man.    | 7. <i>Carmen</i> , a song.  |
| 4. <i>Vis</i> , power.     | 8. <i>Nox</i> , the night.  |

FOURTH DECLENSION.

The Fourth Declension makes the genitive case singular to end in *ūs* ; as,

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. <i>Măn-ūs</i> , a hand.	Nom. <i>Măn-ūs</i> , hands.
Gen. <i>Măn-ūs</i> , of a hand.	Gen. <i>Măn-ūīm</i> , of hands.
Dat. <i>Măn-ūī</i> , to a hand.	Dat. <i>Măn-ībūs</i> , to hands.
Acc. <i>Măn-ūīm</i> , a hand.	Acc. <i>Măn-ūs</i> , hands.
Voc. <i>Măn-ūs</i> , O hand.	Voc. <i>Măn-ūs</i> , O hands.
Abl. <i>Măn-ū</i> , from a hand.	Abl. <i>Măn-ībūs</i> , from hands.

*Domus*, 'a house,' is thus declined :—

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. <i>Dŏmŭs</i> ,	Nom. <i>Dŏmŭs</i> ,
Gen. <i>Dŏmī</i> ('at home') and <i>Dŏmŭs</i> ,	Gen. <i>Dŏmŭm</i> , and <i>Dŏmō-</i> <i>rŭm</i> ,
Dat. <i>Dŏmŭi</i> ,	Dat. <i>Dŏmŭbŭs</i> ,
Acc. <i>Dŏmŭm</i> ,	Acc. <i>Dŏmŭs</i> ,
Voc. <i>Dŏmŭs</i> ,	Voc. <i>Dŏmŭs</i> ,
Abl. <i>Dŏmō</i> .	Abl. <i>Dŏmŭbŭs</i> .

Tolle *me*, *mu*, *mi*, *mis*, si declinare *Domus vis*.

*Note.* — To distinguish nouns ending in *us* of the fourth declension from those of a like termination of the second declension, the following rule must be attended to :—"Substantives in *us* from the root of the supine (which end in *tus* or *sus*) are of the fourth declension, except those, like *legatus*, that denote *persons*."

### *Gender of Nouns of the Fourth Declension.*

Nouns of this declension ending in *us* are, for the most part, of the masculine gender. *Manus*, and a few others, belong to the feminine gender.

Nouns ending in *u* belong to the neuter gender, and the *u* is not changed in the singular number.

### EXERCISES.

Decline the following nouns of the fourth declension :—

- |                               |                           |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. <i>Luctus</i> , grief.     | 3. <i>Metus</i> , fear.   |
| 2. <i>Senatus</i> , a senate. | 4. <i>Cornu</i> , a horn. |

### FIFTH DECLENSION.

The Fifth Declension makes the genitive case singular to end in *ēi* ; as,

*Singular.*

Nom. *Dĩ-ēs*, a day.  
 Gen. *Dĩ-ēi*, of a day.  
 Dat. *Dĩ-ēi*, to a day.  
 Acc. *Dĩ-ēm*, a day.  
 Voc. *Dĩ-ēs*, O day.  
 Abl. *Dĩ-ē*, from a day.

*Plural.*

Nom. *Dĩ-ēs*, days.  
 Gen. *Dĩ-ērūm*, of days.  
 Dat. *Dĩ-ēbūs*, to days.  
 Acc. *Dĩ-ēs*, days.  
 Voc. *Dĩ-ēs*, O days.  
 Abl. *Dĩ-ēbūs*, from days.

*Note 1.*—The genitive and dative singular have *ē* short before the final vowel when a consonant precedes.

*Note 2.*—*Res*, *species*, and *dies* only have the plural complete.

*Gender of Nouns of the Fifth Declension.*

All nouns of the fifth declension belong to the feminine gender, with the exception of *dies*, which is masculine and feminine in the singular, masculine only in the plural. *Meridies* is masculine only: it has no plural.

EXERCISES.

Decline the following nouns of the fifth declension :—

- |                          |                            |
|--------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. <i>Fides</i> , faith. | 3. <i>Facies</i> , a face. |
| 2. <i>Glacies</i> , ice. | 4. <i>Res</i> , a thing.   |

IRREGULAR DECLENSIONS.

INDECLINABLE SUBSTANTIVES.

1. All substantives that have the same form in all their cases, the names of the alphabet, neuters in *u* of the fourth declension in the singular, and the Greek words in *i* and *y*, are indeclinable.

2. Some substantives want particular cases, or even a whole number: many have no *nominative*; as, *dapis*,

*opis*, &c. Many words of one syllable have no *genitive plural*; as, *cor*, *glos*, *pax*, &c.

*Fas* and *nefas* are only used in the nominatives and accusatives; *fors* only in the nominative and ablative singular; *situs* in the accusative and ablative singular. *Metus* in the singular is whole, and has only the nominative and accusative in the plural.

Defectives in number have either no plural or no singular.

1. Many substantives, from their meaning, can have no plural: such as the names of *abstract ideas*; as, *pietas*, &c.: substantives which express a *substance* or *mass*; as, *aurum*, &c.: collective substantives; as, *plebs*, &c.

2. Some substantives have no singular; as, *arma*, *artus*, *ambages*, *bellaria*, *crepundia*, *divitiæ*, &c. &c.: also, *gemini*, *liberi*, *majores*, *posterî*, *primores*, *proceres*; and the titles of the gods; as, *inferi*, *penates*, &c.

The following substantives have only their plurals:—*Kalendæ*, *nonæ*, &c.; the names of festivals and solemn games; as, *ludi*, *Bacchanalia*, &c.; also many names of cities; as, *Athenæ*, *Thebæ*, &c.; and those which are strictly the names of nations; as, *Parisii*.

3. In the following substantives the plural has a different signification from the singular:—

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Ædes</i> , a temple,	<i>ædes</i> , a house.
<i>Auxilium</i> , help, or aid,	<i>auxilia</i> , helpers.
<i>Bonum</i> , something good,	<i>bona</i> , property.
<i>Carcer</i> , a prison,	<i>carceres</i> , the barriers of a race-course.
<i>Castrum</i> , a fort,	<i>castra</i> , a camp.
<i>Comitium</i> , a part of the Roman Forum,	<i>comitia</i> , an assembly for election.
<i>Copia</i> , abundance,	<i>copiæ</i> , forces, troops.

*Singular.*

*Plural.*

*Cupedia*, daintiness,

*cupediæ*, or *cupedia*, dainties.

*Facultas*, faculty,

*facultates*, property.

*Fortuna*, fortune,

*fortunæ*, goods of fortune.

*Litera*, a letter of the alphabet,

*literæ*, an epistle.

*Opis*, help,

*opes*, wealth, power.

*Opera*, labour,

*operæ*, workmen.

*Rostrum*, a beak,

*rostra*, the place from which the orators speak.

*Sal*, salt,

*sales*, witticisms.

Some substantives have also various meanings, according to the gender or number ; as,

*Lustrum*, a space of five years, *lustra*, dens of wild beasts.

*Fastūs*, pride,

*fasti*, calendar.

*Forum*, the market,

*fori*, passages.

*Tempus*, time,

*tempora* (also *tempus*), the temples of the head.

---

NOUNS ADJECTIVE.

Latin adjectives, like nouns, have number, gender, case, and declension.

Some adjectives have three terminations,—masculine, feminine, and neuter ; some have the one masculine and feminine, and the other neuter ; others have only one termination in most of their cases, serving for the three genders.

Most adjectives of three terminations are declined in the masculine and neuter genders like nouns of the second

declension, and in the feminine, like nouns of the first declension ; as, *bonus*, 'good ;' *tener*, 'tender.'

### *Singular.*

	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter.
Nom.	<i>Bŏn-ŭs,</i>	<i>bŏn-ă,</i>	<i>bŏn-ŭm.</i>
Gen.	<i>Bŏn-ī,</i>	<i>bŏn-æ,</i>	<i>bŏn-ī.</i>
Dat.	<i>Bŏn-ō,</i>	<i>bŏn-æ,</i>	<i>bŏn-ō.</i>
Acc.	<i>Bŏn-ŭm,</i>	<i>bŏn-ăm,</i>	<i>bŏn-ŭm.</i>
Voc.	<i>Bŏn-ě,</i>	<i>bŏn-ă,</i>	<i>bŏn-ŭm.</i>
Abl.	<i>Bŏn-ō,</i>	<i>bŏn-ā,</i>	<i>bŏn-ō.</i>

### *Plural.*

	Mas.	Fem.	Neuter.
Nom.	<i>Bŏn-ī,</i>	<i>bŏn-æ,</i>	<i>bŏn-ă.</i>
Gen.	<i>Bŏn-ŏrŭm,</i>	<i>bŏn-ărŭm,</i>	<i>bŏn-ŏrŭm.</i>
Dat.	<i>Bŏn-īs, of all genders.</i>		
Acc.	<i>Bŏn-ōs,</i>	<i>bŏn-ās,</i>	<i>bŏn-ă.</i>
Voc.	<i>Bŏn-ī,</i>	<i>bŏn-æ,</i>	<i>bŏn-ă.</i>
Abl.	<i>Bŏn-īs, of all genders.</i>		

### *Singular.*

	Mas.	Fem.	Neuter.
Nom.	<i>Tĕn-ĕr,</i>	<i>tĕn-ĕră,</i>	<i>tĕn-ĕrŭm.</i>
Gen.	<i>Tĕn-ĕrĭ,</i>	<i>tĕn-ĕræ,</i>	<i>tĕn-ĕrĭ.</i>
Dat.	<i>Tĕn-ĕrō,</i>	<i>tĕn-ĕræ,</i>	<i>tĕn-ĕrō.</i>
Acc.	<i>Tĕn-ĕrŭm,</i>	<i>tĕn-ĕrăm,</i>	<i>tĕn-ĕrŭm.</i>
Voc.	<i>Tĕn-ĕr,</i>	<i>tĕn-ĕră,</i>	<i>tĕn-ĕrŭm.</i>
Abl.	<i>Tĕn-ĕrō,</i>	<i>tĕn-ĕră,</i>	<i>tĕn-ĕrō.</i>

### *Plural.*

	Mas.	Fem.	Neuter.
Nom.	<i>Tĕn-ĕrĭ,</i>	<i>tĕn-ĕræ,</i>	<i>tĕn-ĕră.</i>
Gen.	<i>Tĕn-ĕrŏrŭm,</i>	<i>tĕn-ĕrărŭm,</i>	<i>tĕn-ĕrŏrŭm.</i>
Dat.	<i>Tĕn-ĕrīs, of all genders.</i>		
Acc.	<i>Tĕn-ĕrŏs,</i>	<i>tĕn-ĕrās,</i>	<i>tĕn-ĕră.</i>
Voc.	<i>Tĕn-ĕrĭ,</i>	<i>tĕn-ĕræ,</i>	<i>tĕn-ĕră.</i>
Abl.	<i>Tĕn-ĕrīs, of all genders.</i>		

*Note.*—*Niger*, ‘black ;’ *æger*, ‘sick ;’ *pulcher*, ‘fair ;’ *sacer*, ‘sacred,’ and a few others, reject the *e* throughout the whole of their cases ; as, *niger*, *nigra*, *nigrum*, genitive *nigri*, &c.

EXERCISES.

Decline the following adjectives of three terminations :—

- |                           |                           |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. <i>Densus</i> , thick. | 3. <i>Ater</i> , dark.    |
| 2. <i>Calidus</i> , hot.  | 4. <i>Pulcher</i> , fair. |

Some adjectives ending in *er* are declined in all the three genders like nouns of the third declension ; as,

*Singular.*

	Mas.	Fem.	Neuter.
Nom.	<i>Acēr</i> ,	<i>acr-īs</i> ,	<i>acr-ē</i> .
Gen.	<i>Acr-īs</i> , of all genders.		
Dat.	<i>Acr-ī</i> , of all genders.		
Acc.	<i>Acr-ēm</i> ,	<i>acr-ēm</i> ,	<i>acr-ē</i> .
Voc.	<i>Acēr</i> ,	<i>acr-īs</i> ,	<i>acr-ē</i> .
Abl.	<i>Acr-ī</i> , of all genders.		

*Plural.*

	Mas.	Fem.	Neuter.
Nom.	<i>Acr-ēs</i> ,	<i>acr-ēs</i> ,	<i>acr-īā</i> .
Gen.	<i>Acr-īūm</i> , of all genders.		
Dat.	<i>Acr-ībūs</i> , of all genders.		
Acc.	<i>Acr-ēs</i> ,	<i>acr-ēs</i> ,	<i>acr-īā</i> .
Voc.	<i>Acr-ēs</i> ,	<i>acr-ēs</i> ,	<i>acr-īā</i> .
Abl.	<i>Acr-ībūs</i> , of all genders.		

*Unus*, ‘one ;’ *solus*, ‘alone ;’ *totus*, ‘the whole ;’ *nullus*, ‘none ;’ *alter*, ‘the other ;’ *uter*, ‘whether of the two,’ make the genitive singular in *īūs*, and the dative in *ī* ; as,



*Singular.*

	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	<i>Ūn-ūs,</i>	<i>ūn-ă,</i>	<i>ūn-ŭm.</i>
Gen.	<i>Ūn-ūs, or ūn-ŭs, of all genders.</i>		
Dat.	<i>Ūn-ī, of all genders.</i>		
Acc.	<i>Ūn-ŭm,</i>	<i>ūn-ăm,</i>	<i>ūn-ŭm.</i>
Voc.	<i>Ūn-ě,</i>	<i>ūn-ă,</i>	<i>ūn-ŭm.</i>
Abl.	<i>Ūn-ō,</i>	<i>ūn-ā,</i>	<i>ūn-ō.</i>

*Plural.*

	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	<i>Ūnī,</i>	<i>ūnæ,</i>	<i>ūn-ă.</i>
Gen.	<i>Ūn-ōrŭm,</i>	<i>ūn-ārŭm,</i>	<i>ūn-ōrŭm.</i>
Dat.	<i>Ūn-īs, of all genders.</i>		
Acc.	<i>Ūn-ōs,</i>	<i>ūn-ās,</i>	<i>ūn-ă.</i>
Voc.	<i>Ūn-ī,</i>	<i>ūn-æ,</i>	<i>ūn-ă.</i>
Abl.	<i>Ūn-īs, of all genders.</i>		

*Note 1.*—*Unus* has no plural number, unless it be joined to a noun that has not the singular number; as, *una mœnia*, ‘a wall.’

*Note 2.*—*Utercunque*, *uterque*, *uterlibet*, *utervis*, are declined like *uter*, the affix unchanged.

*Note 3.*—*Alius*, ‘another,’ is declined like *unus*, except that it makes *aliud* in the neuter gender, singular number, and has always *aliūs* in the genitive case.

## EXERCISE.

Decline the following adjectives of three terminations:—

1. *Totus*, the whole.
2. *Nullus*, none.
3. *Alius*, another.

*Adjectives of Two Terminations.*

Adjectives of two terminations are declined like substantives of the third declension; as, *brevis*, ‘short;’ *brevior*, ‘shorter.’

*Singular.*

	Mas. and Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	<i>Brěv-īs,</i>	<i>brěv-ě.</i>
Gen.	<i>Brěv-īs, of all genders.</i>	
Dat.	<i>Brěv-ī, of all genders.</i>	
Acc.	<i>Brěv-ēm,</i>	<i>brěc-ě.</i>
Voc.	<i>Brěv-īs,</i>	<i>brěv-ě.</i>
Abl.	<i>Brěv-ī, of all genders.</i>	

*Plural.*

	Mas. and Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	<i>Brěv-ēs,</i>	<i>brěv-ĩa.</i>
Gen.	<i>Brěv-ĩm, of all genders.</i>	
Dat.	<i>Brěv-ĩbũs, of all genders.</i>	
Acc.	<i>Brěv-ēs,</i>	<i>brěv-ĩa.</i>
Voc.	<i>Brěv-ēs,</i>	<i>brěv-ĩa.</i>
Abl.	<i>Brěv-ĩbũs, of all genders.</i>	

*Singular.*

	Mas. and Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	<i>Brěvi-ōr,</i>	<i>brěvi-ūs.</i>
Gen.	<i>Brěvi-ōris, of all genders.</i>	
Dat.	<i>Brěvi-ōrī, of all genders.</i>	
Acc.	<i>Brěvi-ōrēm,</i>	<i>brěvi-ūs.</i>
Voc.	<i>Brěvi-ōr,</i>	<i>brěvi-ūs.</i>
Abl.	<i>Brěvi-ōrě, of all genders.</i>	

*Plural.*

	Mas. and Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	<i>Brěvi-ōrēs,</i>	<i>brěvi-ōrǎ.</i>
Gen.	<i>Brěvi-ōrũm, of all genders.</i>	
Dat.	<i>Brěvi-ōrĩbũs, of all genders.</i>	
Acc.	<i>Brěvi-ōrēs,</i>	<i>brěvi-ōrǎ.</i>
Voc.	<i>Brěvi-ōrēs,</i>	<i>brěvi-ōrǎ.</i>
Abl.	<i>Brěvi-ōrĩbũs, of all genders.</i>	

All other adjectives have only one ending in the nominative for all genders ; as, *audax*, 'bold,' which is thus declined :—

*Singular.*

	Mas. and Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	<i>Aūd-āx.</i>	
Gen.	<i>Aūd-ācīs</i> , of all genders.	
Dat.	<i>Aūd-ācī</i> , of all genders.	
Acc.	<i>Aūd-ācēm</i> ,	<i>aūd-āx.</i>
Voc.	<i>Aūd-āx.</i>	
Abl.	<i>Aūd-ācī</i> , or <i>aūd-ācē</i> .	

*Plural.*

	Mas. and Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	<i>Aūd-ācēs</i> ,	<i>aūd-ācīā.</i>
Gen.	<i>Aūd-ācīūm.</i>	
Dat.	<i>Aūd-ācībūs</i> , of all genders.	
Acc.	<i>Aūd-ācēs</i> ,	<i>aūd-ācīā.</i>
Voc.	<i>Aūd-ācēs</i> ,	<i>aūd-ācīā.</i>
Abl.	<i>Aūd-ācībūs.</i>	

EXERCISES.

Decline,—

1. *Tristis*, sorrowful.
2. *Pugnax*, warlike.
3. *Felix*, happy.

*Ambo*, 'both ;' and *duo*, 'two,' are thus declined in the plural number only :—

*Plural.*

	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	<i>Am-bō</i> ,	<i>āmbæ</i> ,	<i>ām-bō.</i>
Gen.	<i>Am-bōrūm</i> ,	<i>ām-bārūm</i> ,	<i>ām-bōrūm.</i>
Dat.	<i>Am-bōbūs</i> ,	<i>ām-bābūs</i> ,	<i>ām-bōbūs.</i>
Acc.	<i>Am-bōs</i> ,	<i>ām-bās</i> ,	<i>ām-bō.</i>
Voc.	<i>Am-bō</i> ,	<i>ām-bæ</i> ,	<i>ām-bō.</i>
Abl.	<i>Am-bōbūs</i> ,	<i>ām-bābūs</i> ,	<i>ām-bōbūs.</i>

*Plus*, 'more,' is thus declined:—

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
	Neut.	Mas. and Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	<i>Plūs.</i>	Nom. <i>Plū-rēs,</i>	<i>plū-rā.</i>
Gen.	<i>Plū-rīs.</i>	Gen. <i>Plū-rūm.</i>	
Dat.	Wanting.	Dat. <i>Plū-rībūs.</i>	
Acc.	<i>Plūs.</i>	Acc. <i>Plū-rēs,</i>	<i>plū-rā.</i>
		Abl. <i>Plū-rībūs.</i>	

In the singular it is only neuter, and a substantive ; in the plural an adjective of all three genders.

*Note 1.*—The cardinal numbers from *quatuor* to *centum* are undeclined.

*Note 2.*—*Mille* (a thousand) is indeclinable as a numeral ; but, used as a plural substantive, it is thus inflected:—

Nom. Acc. and Voc.	<i>Mil-lia</i> , thousands.
Gen. . . . .	<i>Mil-lium</i> , of thousands.
Dat. and Abl. . .	<i>Mil-libus</i> , to or by thousands.

#### GENERAL RULES.

1. The ablative singular ends in *i*, even when the adjective is used as a noun ; as, *memori*, &c. ; except in *juvenis* and *ædilis*,—in adjectives of one termination used as substantives ; as, *infans*, &c.,—in comparatives, —in words compounded with *corpus*, *color*, and *pes* ; as, *bicorpor*, *discolor*, *bipes*,—adjectives used as proper names ; as, *Martialis*, — and also in the following adjectives : *compos*, *cælebs*, *pubes*, &c.

(a) Participles in *ns*, when used as participles, have *e* in the ablative ; when used as adjectives, generally *i*.

2. The nominative, accusative, and vocative plural of the neuter have in adjectives and participles the ending *ia*, and the genitive plural in *ium* ; as, *acria*, *acrium*. *Vetus*

has *vetera* and *veterum*; *plus* has *plura*, *plurium*; *complures* has *a* or *ia*, but only *complurium*.

*Note.*—The following end in *um* in the genitive plural, —*consors*, *inops*, &c.; also compounds ending in *ceps* and *fax*; as, *anceps* and *artifex*.

### *Comparison of Adjectives.*

Adjectives have three degrees of comparison or signification;—the Positive, the Comparative, and the Superlative.

The Positive denotes the quality of a thing absolutely, and is the unchanged form of the adjective; as, *longus*, 'long.'

The Comparative degree denotes that the quality expressed by it belongs to one or two objects in a greater degree than the other; as, *longior*, 'longer.'

And it is formed by adding *or* for the masculine and feminine, and *us* for the neuter, to a case of the positive ending in *i*; as, *longus*, *longi*, *longior*, *longius*; *brevis*, *brevi*, *brevior*, *brevius*.

*Sinister*, however, makes *sinisterior*.

The Superlative degree denotes that the quality expressed by it belongs to one of several in a greater degree than to any of the rest.

And it is formed by adding *ssimus* to the case of the positive ending in *i*; as, *longi*, *longissimus*; *brevi*, *brevissimus*.

### *Exceptions.*

1. All the adjectives ending in *er* form the Superlative by adding *rimus* to the nominative singular masculine; as, *pulcher*, 'fair'; *pulcherrimus*, 'fairest.'

2. *Facilis*, 'easy'; *difficilis*, 'difficult'; *similis*, 'alike'; *dissimilis*, 'unlike'; *gracilis*, 'slender'; *humilis*, 'low'; form the superlative in *illimus*; as, *facillimus*, &c.

Verbals in *bilis* have no superlative.

The Superlatives of *agilis*, 'nimble,' and *docilis*, 'docile,' do not occur.

3. Adjectives compounded with *dīcus*, *fīcus*, form their Comparative in *entior*, and Superlative in *entissimus*; as, *maledicus*, *maledicentior*, *maledicentissimus*; *munificus*, *munificentior*, *munificentissimus*; *benecolus*, *benevolentior*, *benevolentissimus*.

*Veridicus*, 'divine,' is not compared.

### Comparison by Adverbs.

Adjectives in which a vowel precedes *us* in the nominative, form their Comparative and Superlative by the adverbs *magis*, 'more,' and *maxime*, 'most'; as, *idoneus*, 'fit'; *magis idoneus*, 'more fit'; *maxime idoneus*, 'most fit.'

But when *qu* precedes *us*, then the comparison is regular; as, *antiquus*, 'ancient'; *antiquior*, 'more ancient'; *antiquissimus*, 'most ancient.'

### Irregular and Defective Comparisons.

1. There are some adjectives which form their Comparison from disused forms, or borrow it from other words of like meaning; as,

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
<i>Bonus</i> , good,	<i>melior</i> , better,	<i>optimus</i> , best.
<i>Malus</i> , bad,	<i>pejor</i> , worse,	<i>pessimus</i> , worst.
<i>Magnus</i> , great,	<i>major</i> , greater,	<i>maximus</i> , greatest.
<i>Multus</i> , much, {	S. N. <i>plus</i> , more,	} <i>plurimus</i> , most.
	Plur. <i>plures</i> , <i>plura</i> ,	
<i>Parvus</i> , little,	<i>minor</i> , less,	<i>minimus</i> , least.
<i>Nequam</i> , wicked,	<i>nequior</i> , more wicked,	<i>nequissimus</i> , most wicked.

*Note.*—*Dives*, 'rich,' has commonly for its comparative *ditior*, richer; superlative, *ditissimus*, richest.

2. The following adjectives have a double irregular superlative :—

*Exter* (*extra*), outward; *exterior*, more outward; *extremus* and *extimus*, most outward, or uttermost.

*Inferus* (*infra*), low; *inferior*, lower, or more low; *infimus* and *imus*, most low, or lowest.

*Superus* (*supra*), high; *superior*, higher, or more high; *supremus* and *summus*, highest, or most high.

*Posterus* (*post*), hind; *posterior*, hinder; *postremus* and *postumus*, hindmost.

3. The following Comparatives and Superlatives have a preposition for the Positive :—

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
<i>Citra</i> , near,	<i>citerior</i> , nearer,	<i>citimus</i> , nearest.
<i>Ultra</i> , far,	<i>ulterior</i> , farther,	<i>ultimus</i> , farthest.
<i>Intra</i> , inward,	<i>interior</i> , more inw.,	<i>intimus</i> , most inw.
<i>Prope</i> , near,	<i>propior</i> , nearer,	<i>proximus</i> , nearest.

4. The following Adjectives have no Positive :—

Comparative.	Superlative.
<i>Deterior</i> , naughtier,	<i>deterrimus</i> , naughtiest.
<i>Ocior</i> , more swift,	<i>ocissimus</i> , most swift.
<i>Potior</i> , more powerful,	<i>potissimus</i> , most powerful.
<i>Prior</i> , former,	<i>primus</i> , first.

5. The following adjectives have a superlative, but not a comparative; as, *bellus*, 'pretty;' *bellissimus*, 'most pretty;' *falsus*, 'false;' *falsissimus*, 'most false;' *diversus*, 'contrary;' *diversissimus*, 'most contrary;' *inclutus*, 'famous;' *inclutissimus*, 'most famous;' *novus*, *novissimus*, and a few others.

6. Many adjectives have the comparative, but not the

superlative ; as verbals in *bilis*, and most adjectives in *alis* and *ilis*.

*Juvenis*, 'young,' comparative *junior*, 'younger ;' *senex*, 'old,' comparative *senior*, 'older,' have no superlative.

### Comparison of Adverbs.

Adverbs in *ter* and *e*, and most of those in *o*, may be compared when the sense requires it.

The Comparative is formed in *ius*, and the Superlative in *issime* ; but with some exceptions as adjectives.

The neuter gender of adjectives used adverbially, as *difficile*, &c., may be also compared ; as, *difficilius*, *difficillime*.

---

## PRONOUNS.

A Pronoun is a word used instead of a noun, and is itself a substantive, and called Personal Pronoun, or an adjective, being either a Demonstrative, Relative, or Interrogative pronoun.

There are also Possessive Pronouns.

There are ten simple pronouns,—three personal, *ego*, 'I ;' *tu*, 'thou ;' *sui*, 'of himself, herself, itself : ' four demonstrative,—*hic*, *hæc*, *hoc*, 'this ;' *iste*, *ista*, *istud*, 'that ;' *ille*, *illa*, *illud*, 'that ;' *is*, *ea*, *id*, 'that : ' to which may be added *ipse*, *ipsa*, *ipsum*, 'he himself,' 'she herself,' 'itself ;' the relative, *qui*, *quæ*, *quod*, 'who ;' the interrogative, *quis*, *quæ*, *quid* ? and *qui*, *quæ*, *quod* ? 'who ?' 'what ?'

From these are derived the pronoun adjectives, *meus*, 'mine ;' *tuus*, 'thine ;' *suus*, 'his ;' *noster*, 'ours ;' *vester*, 'yours ;' and *cujus*, *a*, *um*, 'whose ?' and those that denote origin,—*nostras*, 'of our country ;' *vestras*, 'of your country.'



## DECLENSION OF PRONOUNS.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
Nom.	<i>Egō</i> , I.	Nom.	<i>Nōs</i> , we.
Gen.	<i>Mē-i</i> , of me.	Gen.	<i>Nōs-trūm</i> , v. <i>nōs-trī</i> , of us.
Dat.	<i>Mī-hī</i> , to me.	Dat.	<i>Nō-bīs</i> , to us.
Acc.	<i>Mē</i> , me.	Acc.	<i>Nōs</i> , us.
Voc.	—	Voc.	—
Abl.	<i>Mē</i> , from me.	Abl.	<i>Nō-bīs</i> , from us.

  

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
Nom.	<i>Tū</i> , thou.	Nom.	<i>Vōs</i> , ye, or you.
Gen.	<i>Tū-i</i> , of thee.	Gen.	<i>Vēs-trūm</i> , v. <i>vēs-trī</i> , of you.
Dat.	<i>Tī-bī</i> , to thee.	Dat.	<i>Vō-bīs</i> , to you.
Acc.	<i>Tē</i> , thee.	Acc.	<i>Vōs</i> , you.
Voc.	<i>Tū</i> , O thou.	Voc.	<i>Vōs</i> , O ye.
Abl.	<i>Tē</i> , with thee.	Abl.	<i>Vō-bīs</i> , with you.

*Sui*, 'of himself, herself, itself,' has no nominative or vocative case, and is thus declined:—

*Singular and Plural.*

Nom.	Wanting.	} herself, itself, themselves.
Gen.	<i>Sū-i</i> , of himself,	
Dat.	<i>Sī-bī</i> , to himself,	
Acc.	<i>Sē</i> , himself,	
Voc.	Wanting.	
Abl.	<i>Sē</i> , by himself,	

*Note.*—To the cases of these three pronouns, except the genitive plural, *met* may be added to express the English 'self' (*egomet*, *mihimet*, &c.), with or without *ipse*.

*Se* admits a reduplication, *sese*, in the same sense.

*Hic*, *hæc*, *hoc*, 'this,' is thus declined:—

*Singular.*

	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	<i>Hīc,</i>	<i>hæc,</i>	<i>hēc.</i>
Gen.	<i>Hūjus, of all genders.</i>		
Dat.	<i>Hūc, of all genders.</i>		
Acc.	<i>Hūnc,</i>	<i>hānc,</i>	<i>hēc.</i>
Voc.	—	—	—
Abl.	<i>Hōc,</i>	<i>hāc,</i>	<i>hēc.</i>

*Plural.*

	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	<i>Hī,</i>	<i>hæ,</i>	<i>hæc.</i>
Gen.	<i>Hōrūm,</i>	<i>hārūm,</i>	<i>hōrūm.</i>
Dat.	<i>Hīs, of all genders.</i>		
Acc.	<i>Hōs,</i>	<i>hās,</i>	<i>hæc.</i>
Voc.	—	—	—
Abl.	<i>Hīs, of all genders.</i>		

*Note.*—The demonstrative force is strengthened by the affixes *ce* and *cine*.

*Ille* and *iste* are thus declined :—

*Singular.*

	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	<i>Il-lē,</i>	<i>īl-lā,</i>	<i>īl-lūd.</i>
Gen.	<i>Il-lūs, vel īl-lūs, of all genders.</i>		
Dat.	<i>Il-lī, of all genders.</i>		
Acc.	<i>Il-lūm,</i>	<i>īl-lām,</i>	<i>īl-lūd.</i>
Voc.	—	—	—
Abl.	<i>Il-lō,</i>	<i>īl-lā,</i>	<i>īl-lō.</i>

*Plural.*

	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	<i>Il-lī,</i>	<i>īl-læ,</i>	<i>īl-lā.</i>
Gen.	<i>Il-lōrūm,</i>	<i>īl-lārum,</i>	<i>īl-lōrūm.</i>
Dat.	<i>Il-līs, of all genders.</i>		
Acc.	<i>Il-lōs,</i>	<i>īl-lās,</i>	<i>īl-lā.</i>
Voc.	—	—	—
Abl.	<i>Il-līs, of all genders.</i>		

In like manner may be declined *ipse*, 'he himself;' except that the nominative and accusative cases singular have *ipsum* in the neuter gender.

*Is, ea, id*, 'that,' is declined thus:—

<i>Singular.</i>			
	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	<i>Is,</i>	<i>ĕă,</i>	<i>ĭd.</i>
Gen.	<i>Ē-jūs</i> , of all genders.		
Dat.	<i>Ē-ī</i> , of all genders.		
Acc.	<i>Ē-ŭm,</i>	<i>ĕ-ăm,</i>	<i>ĭd.</i>
Voc.	—	—	—
Abl.	<i>Ē-ō,</i>	<i>ĕ-ā.</i>	<i>ĕ-ō.</i>

<i>Plural.</i>			
	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	<i>Ī-ī,</i>	<i>ĕ-æ,</i>	<i>ĕ-ă.</i>
Gen.	<i>Ē-ōrŭm,</i>	<i>ĕ-ārŭm,</i>	<i>ĕ-ōrŭm.</i>
Dat.	<i>Ī-īs</i> , vel <i>ĕ-īs</i> , vel <i>īs.</i>		
Acc.	<i>Ē-ōs,</i>	<i>ĕ-ās,</i>	<i>ĕ-ă.</i>
Voc.	—	—	—
Abl.	<i>Ī-īs</i> , vel <i>ĕ-īs</i> , vel <i>īs.</i>		

In like manner, also, is declined its compound *idem*, 'the same,' taking care that the *dem* is to be annexed to each case.

The Relative *qui, quæ, quod*, is declined in the following manner:—

<i>Singular.</i>			
	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	<i>Qui,</i>	<i>quæ,</i>	<i>quod.</i>
Gen.	<i>Cū-jūs</i> , of all genders.		
Dat.	<i>Cui,</i> of all genders.		
Acc.	<i>Quēm,</i>	<i>quām,</i>	<i>quod.</i>
Voc.	—	—	—
Abl.	<i>Quō,</i>	<i>quā,</i>	<i>quō</i> , vel <i>quē.</i>

	<i>Plural.</i>		
	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	<i>Qui,</i>	<i>quæ,</i>	<i>quæ.</i>
Gen.	<i>Qu-ōrūm,</i>	<i>qu-ārūm,</i>	<i>qu-ōrūm.</i>
Dat.	<i>Qu-ibūs</i> ( <i>qu-ēs</i> , obs.)		
Acc.	<i>Quōs,</i>	<i>quās,</i>	<i>quæ.</i>
Voc.	—	—	—
Abl.	<i>Qu-ibūs</i> ( <i>qu-ēs</i> , obs.)		

In like manner also are declined its compounds, *quidam*, ‘a certain one;’ *quivis*, *quilibet*, ‘any one;’ *quicunque*, ‘whosoever,’ &c. &c.

The Indefinite pronoun *quis*, ‘any one,’ is declined like *qui*, except that in the nominative singular feminine, and also in the nominative and accusative plural neuter, it makes both *quæ* and *qua*; and in the nominative and accusative neuter singular it makes *quid*.

The Interrogative pronoun, when joined with a substantive, is *qui*? when standing without a substantive, the nominative singular masculine is *quis*? and in the nominative and accusative singular neuter, *quid*?

*Quisquis*, ‘whosoever,’ is thus declined:—

	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	<i>Quisquīs,</i>		<i>quīdquīd,</i> or <i>quīcquīd.</i>
Acc.			<i>quīdquīd,</i> or <i>quīcquīd.</i>
Abl.	<i>Quōquō,</i>	<i>quāquā,</i>	<i>quōquō.</i>

*Meus*, ‘mine,’ *tuus*, ‘thine,’ *suus*, ‘his,’ are declined like *bonus*, except that *meus* makes *mi* in the vocative case singular masculine, and *tuus*, *suus*, with many others, have no vocative case.

## VERBS.

The Verb is that part of speech by which it is affirmed that something acts or suffers.

Verbs have therefore two forms or voices,—the Active and Passive.

A Verb Active expresses an action, and consequently implies an agent, and an object acted upon ; as, *Amo te*, 'I love you.'

A Verb Passive expresses a passion or suffering, or the receiving of an action, and consequently implies an object acted upon and an agent by which it is acted upon ; as, *Amor ab eo*, 'I am loved by him.'

Of verbs ending in *o*, some are transitive, others intransitive, or neuter.

A Transitive Verb expresses an action which passes over to the object, or has an effect upon some other thing ; as, *Amo virum*, 'I love the man.'

An Intransitive Verb expresses an action which is confined within its subject, and does not pass over to any object ; as, *vivit*, 'he lives ;' *sto*, 'I stand ;' *ambulo*, 'I walk.'

Transitive verbs have passive forms or voices by adding *r* ; intransitive or neuter verbs have not.

Some verbs have a passive form and an active signification. They are called Deponents (as if they laid aside their passive signification), and are transitive or intransitive ; as, *consolor*, 'I comfort ;' *glorior*, 'I boast.'

*Note 1.*—The neuter verbs *audeo*, *fido*, *gaudeo*, *soleo*, have a passive form with an active sense in the perfect ; as, *ausus sum*, 'I dared ;' *fisus sum*, *garisus sum*, *solitus sum* ; but follow the active form in the other tenses. They are called Neuter Passives.

*Fio*, 'I become ;' *vapulo*, 'I am beaten ;' *veneo*, 'I am sold,' have a passive sense, and serve as passives to *facio*, *verbero*, *vendo*.

*Note 2.*—From neuter verbs a passive impersonal—that is, a verb of the third person singular, without any definite subject—is formed ; as, *ventum est*, &c. The subject, though it cannot be in the nominative, may be in the ablative, with *ab* or *a* ; as, *A nobis ventum est*, 'We have arrived.'

# MOODS.

A Mood (*modus*) expresses the manner in which the action or state denoted by the verb exists.

There are in Latin four moods,—the Indicative, the Imperative, the Potential or Subjunctive, and the Infinitive.

1. The Indicative mood declares the action or state to exist simply and as a fact ; as, *Ego amo*, ‘ I do love ; ’ or asks a question ; as, *Amas tu ?* ‘ Dost thou love ? ’

2. The Imperative mood expresses a command, a request, a wish, or an exhortation ; as, *Scribe*, ‘ Write thou ; ’ *Panem nostrum quotidianum da nobis*, ‘ Give us this day our daily bread.’

3. The Subjunctive or Potential mood speaks of the subject as it is conceived in the mind, and is called Subjunctive when it is joined to another verb, or clause going before it ; as, *Nescio quis sis*, ‘ I know not who thou art.’ It is generally called Potential when it signifies power, duty, inclination, or wish.

4. The Infinitive mood speaks of an act or state not defining the person or time. The infinitive of the perfect denotes that the act or state is finished ; as, *amavisse*, ‘ to have loved ; ’ the infinitive of the present, that it is not finished ; as, *amare*, ‘ to love.’

# TENSES.

Tense (*tempus*) is the time in which the action of a verb exists.

Time is naturally divided into three divisions ; viz., Present, Past, and Future.

The Past tense has three divisions, and the Future two divisions ; so that in Latin there are six tenses,—Present, Imperfect, Perfect, Pluperfect, First and Second Future.

1. The Present tense represents the action as taking

D

place at the present time ; as, *scribo*, 'I write, am writing.'

2. The Imperfect tense speaks of what was begun, but was not finished at some particular past time ; as, *scribebam*, 'I wrote, was writing.'

3. The Perfect tense speaks of an action finished, and also conveys an allusion to the present time ; as, *scripsi*, 'I have written.'

4. The Pluperfect tense speaks of an action not only past, but also prior to some other point of time specified in the sentence ; as, *scripseram*, 'I had written' (before you spoke).

5. The First Future tense speaks of an action as yet to come, either with or without regard to the precise time ; as, *scribam*, 'I shall write.'

6. The Second Future, or Future Perfect, speaks of an action which will have been done when something else has been done ; as, *scripsero*, 'I shall have written.'

There is the same number of tenses in the passive voice ; but the finished action is expressed by a circumlocution with the participle and the verb *sum* ; as, *scribar*, *scribebar*, *scriptus sum* (*fui*), &c.

The Imperative and Subjunctive moods have no future tenses.

#### GERUNDS AND SUPINES.

Verbs have three Gerunds, ending in *di*, *do*, *dum*, which serve to complete the infinitive present active ; as, *amandi*, 'of loving ;' *amando*, 'in loving ;' *amandum*, 'to love.'

Verbs have two Supines, ending in *um* and *u*, which are cases of verbal substantives, and which also serve to complete the infinitive.

The supine in *um* is used only with verbs expressing or implying a motion to a place ; as, *Eo cubitum*, 'I go to roost.'

The supine in *u* has a passive sense, and is used only after adjectives, or after one or two substantives used adjectively ; as, *Difficile dictu*, 'Difficult to be said.'

### PARTICIPLES.

The Participle is in form an adjective, and expresses that the action or state is either completely finished, as *amatus*, 'loved,'—participle of the perfect ; or not finished, as *amans*, 'loving,'—participle of the present ; or about to exist, as *amaturus*, 'about to love,'—participle of the future.

*Note.*—There is no participle of the perfect active equivalent to the English 'having loved.' Deponent verbs, however, have a perfect participle with an active meaning ; as, *locutus*, 'having spoken.'

### NUMBERS AND PERSONS.

Latin verbs have two numbers—Singular and Plural, and three persons in each number ; the first denoting the person who speaks ; the second, the person to whom he speaks ; and the third, that of which he speaks.

### FORMATION OF THE TENSES.

The word 'conjugation' means a yoking or tying together. To conjugate a verb, therefore, is to yoke or connect to each of the persons its corresponding termination throughout the whole verb.

There are in Latin four conjugations, distinguished by the infinitive mood, which ends thus :—

First conjugation, *āre*.

Second conjugation, *ēre*.

Third conjugation, *ere*.

Fourth conjugation, *īre*.



The present indicatives of these conjugations are—

First conjugation, *ô, âs.*

Second conjugation, *êô, ês.*

Third conjugation, *ô, ÿs.*

Fourth conjugation, *ÿô, ÿs.*

In order to form the other tenses, it is necessary to know the perfect and the supine, from which they are derived.

These four forms end thus :—

	Pres.	Perf.	Supine.	Infin.
First conjugation,	<i>ô</i>	<i>âvî</i>	<i>âtûm</i>	<i>âre</i>
Second conjugation,	<i>êô</i>	<i>ÿvî</i>	<i>ÿtûm</i>	<i>êre</i>
Third conjugation,	<i>ô</i>	<i>î</i>	<i>tûm</i>	<i>êre</i>
Fourth conjugation,	<i>ÿô</i>	<i>ÿvî</i>	<i>ÿtûm</i>	<i>ÿre</i>

The present, perfect, supine, and infinitive being known, the other tenses are thus formed :—

From the Infinitive Active is formed—

1. The imperative mood, by dropping *re*; as, *amare*, *ama*; *monere*, *mone*; *regere*, *rege*; *audire*, *audi*.

2. The imperfect subjunctive active, by adding *m*; as, *amarem*, *monerem*, *regerem*, *audirem*.

3. The imperfect subjunctive passive, by adding *r*; as, *amarer*, *monerer*, *regerer*, *audirer*.

4. The infinitive present passive, by changing *e* into *i* in the first, second, and fourth conjugations; as, *amari*, *moneri*, *audiri*; and *ere* into *i* for the third; as, *regi*.

From the Present Indicative active is derived—

1. The present subjunctive active, by changing *o* into *em* in the first conjugation; as, *amo*, *amem*; in the second, third, and fourth into *am*; as, *moneo*, *moneam*; *rego*, *regam*; *audio*, *audiam*. From this is formed the

same tense in the passive, by changing *m* into *r*; as, *amer*, *monear*, *regar*, *audiar*.

2. The imperfect indicative active, by changing *o* in the first conjugation into *abam*; in the second, third, and fourth, into *ebam*; as, *amabam*, *monebam*, *regebam*, *audiebam*. From this is formed the imperfect indicative passive, by changing *m* into *r*; as, *amabar*, *monebar*, *regebar*, *audiebar*.

3. The future active, by changing *o* in the first conjugation into *ābo*, in the second into *ēbo*, in the third and fourth into *am*; as, *amabo*, *monebo*, *regam*, *audiam*.

From this is formed the future passive, by adding *r* in the first and second conjugations, and changing *m* into *r* in the third and fourth; as, *amabor*, *monebor*, *regar*, *audiar*.

The first futures passive are formed from the first futures active, by adding *r* for the first and second conjugations, and by changing *m* into *r* for the third and fourth; as, *amabo*, *amabor*; *monebo*, *monebor*; *regam*, *regar*; *audiam*, *audiar*.

From the perfect indicative active is derived—

1. The perfect infinitive active, by adding *esse*; as, *amari*, *amavisse*; *monuisse*, *rexisse*, *audivisse*.

2. The pluperfect subjunctive, by adding *m* to the infinitive; as, *amavisse*, *amavissem*; *monuisssem*, *rexissem*, *audivissem*.

3. The perfect subjunctive, by changing *i* of the perfect indicative into *erim*; as, *amari*, *amaverim*; *monuerim*, *rexerim*, *audiverim*.

4. The pluperfect indicative, by changing *i* into *eram*; as, *amari*, *amaveram*; *monueram*, *rexeram*, *audiveram*.

5. The second future, or future perfect, by changing *i* into *ero*; as, *amari*, *amavero*; *monuero*, *rexero*, *audivero*.

From the Supine is derived—

1. The perfects passive are formed from the supine active by changing *m* into *s* (together with the present of the verb *esse*); as, *amatum, amatus sum*; *monitum, monitus sum*; *rectum, rectus sum*; *auditum, auditus sum*.

2. The pluperfects passive, by changing *m* into *s* (together with the imperfect of the verb *esse*); as, *amatus eram, monitus eram, rectus eram, auditus eram*.

3. The participle perfect passive, by changing *um* into *us, a, um*; and the participle future active, by changing it into *urus*; as, *amatum, amatus*; *monitus, rectus, auditus*; *amaturus, moniturus, recturus, auditurus*; and the supine in *u*, by throwing away *m*; as, *amatum, amatu*; *monitus, rectu, auditu*.

4. The participle present active ends in the first conjugation in *ans*; in the second and third in *ens*; in the fourth in *iens*; as, *amans, monens, regens, audiens*. Hence is derived the passive participle in *dus* by changing *ns* into *ndus*; as, *amans, amandus*; *monendus, regendus, audiendus*; and also the gerund,—*amandi, amando, amandum*.

The following manner of forming the tenses may appear more intelligible.

#### FORMATION OF THE ACTIVE AND PASSIVE VOICES.

##### *Indicative Mood, Active and Passive Voices.*

1. The presents active end in *o*; as, — 1. *Am-o*;
2. *Mon-eo*; 3. *Reg-o*; 4. *Aud-io*.

The presents passive are formed from the presents active by adding *r*; as, *amo, amor*; *moneo, moneor*; *rego, regor*; *audio, audior*.

2. The imperfects active are formed from the presents

indicative by changing, in the first conjugation, *o* into *abam*, and in the second, third, and fourth into *ebam*; as, *amo, amabam*; *moneo, monebam*; *rego, regebam*; *audio, audiebam*.

The imperfects passive are formed from the imperfects active by changing *m* into *r*; as, *amabam, amabar*; *monebam, monebar*; *regebam, regebar*; *audiebam, audiebar*.

3. The perfects active are formed from the presents indicative active by changing, in the first conjugation, *o* into *avi*; in the second into *ui*; in the third into *i*,—taking care that the letters *c, g, h, qu* become *x* for the perfect, and *c* for the supine,—and in the fourth into *ivi*.

The perfects passive are formed from the supine active by changing *m* into *s*, together with the present indicative of the verb *esse*; as, *amatus sum, monitus sum, rectus sum, auditus sum*.

4. Pluperfects active are formed from the perfects active by changing *i* into *eram*; as, *amavi, amaveram*; *monueram, rexeram, audiveram*.

The pluperfects passive are formed from the supine active by changing *m* into *s*, together with the imperfect indicative of the verb *esse*; as, *amatus eram, monitus eram, rectus eram, auditus eram*.

5. The first futures active are formed from the presents indicative by adding *r* for the first and second conjugations, and by changing *o* into *am* for the third and fourth conjugations; as, *amabo, monebo, regam, audiam*.

The first futures passive are formed from the first futures active by adding *r* for the first and second conjugations, and by changing *m* into *r* for the third and fourth conjugations; as, *amabor, monebor, regar, audiar*.

6. The second futures, or futures perfect active, are formed from the perfects indicative active by changing *i* into *ero*; as, *amavi, amavero*; *monui, monuero*; *rexi, rexero*; *audivi, audivero*.

The second futures, or futures perfect passive, are formed from the supines active by changing *m* into *s* (together with the first future of the verb *esse*); as, *amatus ero, monitus ero, rectus ero, auditus ero*.

### *Imperative Mood, Active and Passive Voices.*

The imperatives active are formed from the presents infinitive active by cutting off *re*; as, *amare, ama*; *monere, mone*; *regere, rege*; *audire, audi*.

The imperatives passive are like the infinitives present active,—*amare, monere, regere, audire*.

### *Subjunctive or Potential Mood, Active and Passive Voices.*

1. The presents active are formed from the presents indicative active by changing, in the first conjugation, *o* into *em*; as, *amo, amem*; and in the second, third, and fourth into *am*; as, *moneo, moneam*; *rego, regam*; *audio, audiam*.

The presents passive are formed from the presents potential active by changing *m* into *r*; as, *amem, amer*; *moneam, monear*; *regam, regar*; *audiam, audiar*.

2. The imperfects active are formed from the infinitive presents active by adding *m*; as, *amare, amarem*; *monere, monerem*; *regere, regerem*; *audire, audirem*.

The imperfects passive are formed from the infinitive presents active by adding *r*; as, *amare, amarer*; *monere, monerer*; *regere, regerer*; *audire, audirer*.

3. The perfects active are formed from the perfects indicative active by changing *i* into *erim*; as, *amavi,*

*amaverim* ; *monui*, *monuerim* ; *rexi*, *rexerim* ; *auditi*, *audiverim*.

The perfects passive are formed from the supines active by changing *m* into *s* (together with the present potential of the verb *esse*,—viz. *sim*) ; as, *amatus sim*, *monitus sim*, *rectus sim*, *auditus sim*.

4. The pluperfects active are formed from the perfects infinitive active by adding *m* ; as, *amavisse*, *amavissem* ; *monuisssem*, *rexisssem*, *audivisssem*.

The pluperfects passive are formed from the supines active by changing *m* into *s* (together with the imperfect potential of the verb *esse*,—viz. *essem*) ; as, *amatus essem*, *monitus essem*, *rectus essem*, *auditus essem*.

### *Infinitive Mood, Active and Passive Voices.*

The infinitives present active are formed thus : 1st, the root of the verb, then the distinguishing vowel of the conjugation, and then the termination *re* ; as, *amāre*, *monēre*, *regēre*, *audire*.

The infinitives present passive are formed from the infinitives present active by changing the termination *e* in the first, second, and fourth conjugations into *i* ; as, *amare*, *amari* ; *moneri*, *audiri* : and *ēre* into *i* in the third ; as, *regere*, *regi*.

The perfects infinitive active are formed from the perfects indicative active by adding *sse* ; as, *amari*, *amavisse* ; *monuisse*, *rexisse*, *audivisse*.

The perfects infinitive passive are the same as the supine active (together with the perfect infinitive of the verb *esse*,—viz. *fuisse*) ; as, *amatum esse* v. *fuisse* ; *monitum esse* v. *fuisse* ; *rectum esse* v. *fuisse* ; *auditum esse* v. *fuisse*.

The futures infinitive active are formed from the supine by changing *um* into *urum* (with the present infinitive of the verb *esse*) ; as, *amaturum esse*, *moniturum esse*, *recturum esse*, *auditurum esse*.

The futures infinitive passive are like the supines active ; viz., *amatum iri, monitum iri, rectum iri*, &c.

*Note.*—*Iri* is really the infinitive of the passive of the impersonal *itur*, ‘things tend.’ Hence the supine is not changed, whatever be the gender or number of the substantive.

### *The Verb Es-sē, ‘to be.’*

*Sūm* is called an auxiliary verb, because it is necessary to complete the conjugation of the passive voice ; and a verb substantive, because it is the most general expression of existence. Principal parts : *sūm, ēs, fūi, ēssē, futūrus*.

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

##### 1.—*Present Tense, ‘Am.’*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. <i>Sūm</i> , I am.	1. <i>Sū-mūs</i> , we are.
2. <i>Ēs</i> , thou art.	2. <i>Ēs-tīs</i> , ye or you are.
3. <i>Ēst</i> , he is.	3. <i>Sūnt</i> , they are.

##### 2.—*Imperfect Tense, ‘Was.’*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. <i>Ēr-ām</i> , I was.	1. <i>Ēr-āmūs</i> , we were.
2. <i>Ēr-ās</i> , thou wast.	2. <i>Ēr-ātīs</i> , ye or you were.
3. <i>Ēr-āt</i> , he was.	3. <i>Ēr-ānt</i> , they were.

##### 3.—*Perfect Tense, ‘Have been.’*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. <i>Fū-i</i> , I have been.	1. <i>Fū-īmūs</i> , we have been.
2. <i>Fū-istī</i> , thou hast been.	2. <i>Fū-istīs</i> , ye or you have been.
3. <i>Fū-it</i> , he has been.	3. <i>Fū-ērūnt</i> v. <i>ērē</i> , they have been.

4.—*Pluperfect Tense*, 'Had been.'

*Singular.*

1. *Fũ-ērām*, I had been.
2. *Fũ-ērās*, thou hadst been.
3. *Fũ-ērāt*, he had been.

*Plural.*

1. *Fũ-ērāmūs*, we had been.
2. *Fũ-ērātīs*, ye or you had been.
3. *Fũ-ērānt*, they had been.

5.—*First Future Tense*, 'Shall or will be.'

*Singular.*

1. *Ēr-ō*, I shall or will be.
2. *Ēr-īs*, thou shalt or wilt be.
3. *Ēr-īt*, he shall or will be.

*Plural.*

1. *Ēr-īmūs*, we shall or will be.
2. *Ēr-ītīs*, ye or you shall or will be.
3. *Ēr-ūnt*, they shall or will be.

6.—*Second Future, or Future Perfect Tense*,  
'Shall or will have been.'

*Singular.*

1. *Fũ-ērō*, I shall or will have been.
2. *Fũ-ērīs*, thou shalt or wilt have been.
3. *Fũ-ērīt*, he shall or will have been.

*Plural.*

1. *Fũ-ērīmūs*, we shall or will have been.
2. *Fũ-ērītīs*, ye or you shall or will have been.
3. *Fũ-ērīnt*, they shall or will have been.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Singular.*

2. *Ēs*, *ēs-tō*, be thou.
3. *Ēs-tō*, let him be.

*Plural.*

2. *Ēs-tě*, *ēs-tōtě*, be ye or you.
3. *Sūn-tō*, let them be.



## SUBJUNCTIVE, OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. — *Present Tense*, ' May or can be.'*Singular.*

1. *Sīm*, I may or can be.
2. *Sīs*, thou mayst or canst be.
3. *Sit*, he may or can be.

*Plural.*

1. *Sīm-ūs*, we may or can be.
2. *Sit-īs*, ye or you may or can be.
3. *Sint*, they may or can be.

2.—*Imperfect Tense*, ' Might or could be.'*Singular.*

1. *Ēs-sēm*, v. *fō-rēm*, I might or could be.
2. *Ēs-sēs*, v. *fō-rēs*, thou mightst or couldst be.
3. *Ēs-sēt*, v. *fō-rēt*, he might or could be.

*Plural.*

1. *Ēs-sēmūs*, v. *fō-rēmūs*, we might or could be.
2. *Ēs-sētīs*, v. *fō-rētīs*, ye or you might or could be.
3. *Ēs-sēnt*, v. *fō-rēnt*, they might or could be.

3.—*Perfect Tense*, ' May have been.'*Singular.*

1. *Fū-ērīm*, I may have been.
2. *Fū-ērīs*, thou mayst have been.
3. *Fū-ērīt*, he may have been.

*Plural.*

1. *Fū-ērīmūs*, we may have been.
2. *Fū-ērītīs*, ye or you may have been.
3. *Fū-ērīnt*, they may have been.

4.—*Pluperfect Tense*, ' Might or could have been.'

*Singular.*

1. *Fŭ-issēm*, I might or could have been.
2. *Fŭ-issēs*, thou mightst or couldst have been.
3. *Fŭ-issēt*, he might or could have been.

*Plural.*

1. *Fŭ-issēmŭs*, we might or could have been.
2. *Fŭ-issētis*, ye or you might or could have been.
3. *Fŭ-issēt*, they might or could have been.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Present and Imperfect Tense.*

*Ēs-sĕ*, to be.

*Perfect and Pluperfect Tense.*

*Fŭ-issĕ*, to have been.

*Future Tense.*

*Fŭ-tŭrŭm ěs-sĕ*, vel *fŏ-rĕ*, to be about to be.

FUTURE PARTICIPLE.

*Fŭ-tŭrŭs*, about to be.

*Fŭ-tŭrŭs* with *sum* forms a *New Conjugation*, *fŭ-tŭrŭs* (*a, um*), *sum, eram, fui, ero, &c.*

*Note.*—The compounds *absum* (participle *absens*), *adsum*, *desum*, *insum*, *intersum*, *obsum*, *præsum* (participle *præsens*), *subsum*, *supersum*, are conjugated like *sum*, except that *insum* has no perfect, nor the tenses formed from it; and that in *prosum* a *d* is placed between, when a vowel follows *pro*; as, *prodesse*.

## DECLENSION OF VERBS REGULAR.

*Active Voice.*

1. *Āmō, ām-āvi, ām-ārē, ām-āndī, ām-āndō, ām-āndūm, ām-ātūm, ām-ātū, ām-āns, ām-ātūrūs, 'to love.'*

2. *Mōn-ēō, mōn-ūi, mōn-ērē, mōn-ēndī, mōn-ēndō, mōn-ēndūm, mōn-ītūm, mōn-ītū, mōn-ēns, mōn-ītūrūs, 'to advise.'*

3. *Rēg-ō, rēx-i, rēg-ērē, rēg-ēndī, rēg-ēndō, rēg-ēndūm, rēc-tūm, rēc-tū, rēc-ēns, rēc-tūrūs, 'to rule.'*

4. *Aūd-iō, aūd-īvi, aūd-irē, aūd-iēndī, aūd-iēndō, aūd-iēndūm, aūd-ītūm, aūd-ītū, aūd-iēns, aūd-ītūrūs, 'to hear.'*

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

*Ām-ō,\* 'I love.'*

RULE.—The First Conjugation of Verbs Active hath *ā* long before *rē* and *rīs*; as, *ām-ārē, ām-ārīs*.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

1.—*Present Tense, 'Do, am.'*

*Singular.*

1. *Ām-ō, I love, or am loving.*
2. *Ām-ās, thou lovest, or art loving.*
3. *Ām-āt, he loves, or is loving.*

*Plural.*

1. *Ām-āmūs, we love, or are loving.*
2. *Ām-ātīs, ye or you love, or are loving.*
3. *Ām-ānt, they love, or are loving.*

\* The *ō* is common as a final syllable, but more generally used as long.

2.—*Imperfect Tense*, 'Did, was.'

*Singular.*

1. *Ām-ābām*, I did love, or was loving.
2. *Ām-ābās*, thou didst love, or wast loving.
3. *Ām-ābāt*, he did love, or was loving.

*Plural.*

1. *Ām-ābāmūs*, we did love, or were loving.
2. *Ām-ābātīs*, ye or you did love, or were loving.
3. *Ām-ābānt*, they did love, or were loving.

3.—*Perfect Tense*, 'Have.'

*Singular.*

1. *Ām-āvī*; I have loved.
2. *Ām-āvīstī*, thou hast loved.
3. *Ām-āvīt*, he has loved.

*Plural.*

1. *Ām-āvīmūs*, we have loved.
2. *Ām-āvīstīs*, ye or you have loved.
3. *Ām-āvērūnt*, v. *ērē*, they have loved.

4.—*Pluperfect Tense*, 'Had.'

*Singular.*

1. *Ām-āvērām*, I had loved.
2. *Ām-āvērās*, thou hadst loved.
3. *Ām-āvērāt*, he had loved.

*Plural.*

1. *Ām-āvērāmūs*, we had loved.
2. *Ām-āvērātīs*, ye or you had loved.
3. *Ām-āvērānt*, they had loved.

5.—*First Future Tense*, 'Shall or will.'*Singular.*

1. *Ām-ābō*, I shall or will love.
2. *Ām-ābīs*, thou shalt or wilt love.
3. *Ām-ābit*, he shall or will love.

*Plural.*

1. *Ām-ābimūs*, we shall or will love.
2. *Ām-ābitīs*, ye or you shall or will love.
3. *Ām-ābunt*, they shall or will love.

6.—*Second Future, or Future Perfect Tense*,  
'Shall or will have.'*Singular.*

1. *Ām-āverō*, I shall or will have loved.
2. *Ām-āverīs*, thou shalt or wilt have loved.
3. *Ām-āverit*, he shall or will have loved.

*Plural.*

1. *Ām-āverimūs*, we shall or will have loved.
2. *Ām-āveritīs*, ye or you shall or will have loved.
3. *Ām-āverint*, they shall or will have loved.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Singular.*

2. *Ām-ā*, *ām-ātō*, love thou.
3. *Ām ātō*, let him love.

*Plural.*

2. *Ām-ātē*, *ām-ātōtē*, love ye or you.
3. *Ām-āntō*, let them love.

SUBJUNCTIVE, OR POTENTIAL MOOD

1.—*Present Tense*, 'May or can.'

*Singular.*

1. *Ām-ēm*, I may or can love.
2. *Ām-ēs*, thou mayst or canst love.
3. *Ām-ēt*, he may or can love.

*Plural.*

1. *Ām-ēmūs*, we may or can love.
2. *Ām-ētīs*, ye or you may or can love.
3. *Ām-ēnt*, they may or can love.

2.—*Imperfect Tense*, 'Might or could.'

*Singular.*

1. *Ām-ārēm*, I might or could love.
2. *Ām-ārēs*, thou mightst or couldst love.
3. *Ām-ārēt*, he might or could love.

*Plural.*

1. *Ām-ārēmūs*, we might or could love.
2. *Ām-ārētīs*, ye or you might or could love.
3. *Ām-ārēnt*, they might or could love.

3.—*Perfect Tense*, 'May have.'

*Singular.*

1. *Ām-āvēřīm*, I may have loved.
2. *Ām-āvēřīs*, thou mayst have loved.
3. *Ām-āvēřīt*, he may have loved.

*Plural.*

1. *Ām-āvēřīmūs*, we may have loved.
2. *Ām-āvēřītīs*, ye or you may have loved.
3. *Ām-āvēřīnt*, they may have loved.

4.—*Pluperfect Tense*, ‘ Might or could have.’*Singular.*

1. *Ām-āvīssēm*, I might or could have loved.
2. *Ām-āvīssēs*, thou mightst or couldst have loved.
3. *Ām-āvīssēt*, he might or could have loved.

*Plural.*

1. *Ām-āvīssēmūs*, we might or could have loved.
2. *Ām-āvīssētis*, ye or you might or could have loved.
3. *Ām-āvīssēt*, they might or could have loved.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Present and Imperfect Tense.**Ām-ārē*, to love.*Perfect and Pluperfect Tense.**Ām-āvīssē*, to have loved.*Future Tense.**Ām-ātūrūm ēssē*, to be about to love.

## GERUNDS.

*Ām-āndī*, of loving.*Ām-āndō*, in or by loving.*Ām-āndūm*, to love.

## SUPINES.

ACTIVE.—*Ām-ātūm*, to love.PASSIVE.—*Ām-ātū*, to be loved.

## PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.—*Ām-āns*, loving.FUTURE.—*Ām-ātūrūs*, about to love.

*Note.*—*Sum* and its tenses, joined with the participle in *rūs*, denote that a person *has a mind to do something*.

Hence arises a new conjugation called *Periphrastic* :  
*ăm-ătūrăs* (*a, um*), *sum, eram, ero, sim, &c.*

SECOND CONJUGATION.

*Mön-ěō*, 'I advise.'

RULE.—The Second Conjugation of verbs active hath  
*ě* long before *rě* and *rīs* ; as, *mön-ěřě, mön-ěrīs*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1.—*Present Tense*, 'Do, am.'

*Singular.*

1. *Mön-ěō*, I advise, or am advising.
2. *Mön-ěs*, thou advisest, or art advising.
3. *Mön-ět*, he advises, or is advising.

*Plural.*

1. *Mön-ēmūs*, we advise, or are advising.
2. *Mön-ētīs*, ye or you advise, or are advising.
3. *Mön-ěnt*, they advise, or are advising.

2.—*Imperfect Tense*, 'Did, was.'

*Singular.*

1. *Mön-ěbām*, I did advise, or was advising.
2. *Mön-ěbās*, thou didst advise, or wast advising.
3. *Mön-ěbāt*, he did advise, or was advising.

*Plural.*

1. *Mön-ěbāmūs*, we did advise, or were advising.
2. *Mön-ěbātīs*, ye or you did advise, or were advising.
3. *Mön-ěbānt*, they did advise, or were advising.



3.—*Perfect Tense*, 'Have.'*Singular.*

1. *Mön-ūi*, I have advised.
2. *Mön-ūistī*, thou hast advised.
3. *Mön-ūit*, he has advised.

*Plural.*

1. *Mön-ūimūs*, we have advised.
2. *Mön-ūistīs*, ye or you have advised.
3. *Mön-ūērūnt*, v. *ērē*, they have advised.

4.—*Pluperfect Tense*, 'Had.'*Singular.*

1. *Mön-ūērām*, I had advised.
2. *Mön-ūērās*, thou hadst advised.
3. *Mön-ūērāt*, he had advised.

*Plural.*

1. *Mön-ūērāmūs*, we had advised.
2. *Mön-ūērātīs*, ye or you had advised.
3. *Mön-ūērānt*, they had advised.

5.—*First Future Tense*, 'Shall or will.'*Singular.*

1. *Mön-ēbō*, I shall or will advise.
2. *Mön-ēbis*, thou shalt or wilt advise.
3. *Mön-ēbit*, he shall or will advise.

*Plural.*

1. *Mön-ēbimūs*, we shall or will advise.
2. *Mön-ēbitīs*, ye or you shall or will advise.
3. *Mön-ēbūnt*, they shall or will advise.

6.—*Second Future, or Future Perfect Tense,*  
'Shall or will have.'

*Singular.*

1. *Mön-üëřō*, I shall or will have advised.
2. *Mön-üëřis*, thou shalt or wilt have advised.
3. *Mön-üëřit*, he shall or will have advised.

*Plural.*

1. *Mön-üëřimūs*, we shall or will have advised.
2. *Mön-üëřitīs*, ye or you shall or will have advised.
3. *Mön-üëřint*, they shall or will have advised.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Singular.*

2. *Mön-ē*, *mön-ētō*, advise thou.
3. *Mön-ētō*, let him advise.

*Plural.*

2. *Mön-ētō*, *mön-ētōtō*, advise ye or you.
3. *Mön-ēntō*, let them advise.

SUBJUNCTIVE, OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

1.—*Present Tense*, 'May or can.'

*Singular.*

1. *Mön-ěām*, I may or can advise.
2. *Mön-ěās*, thou mayst or canst advise.
3. *Mön-ěāt*, he may or can advise.

*Plural.*

1. *Mön-ěāmūs*, we may or can advise.
2. *Mön-ěātīs*, ye or you may or can advise.
3. *Mön-ěānt*, they may or can advise.

2.—*Imperfect Tense*, ‘ Might or could.’*Singular.*

1. *Mōn-ērēm*, I might or could advise.
2. *Mōn-ērēs*, thou mightst or couldst advise.
3. *Mōn-ērēt*, he might or could advise.

*Plural.*

1. *Mōn-ērēmūs*, we might or could advise.
2. *Mōn-ērētīs*, ye or you might or could advise.
3. *Mōn-ērēt*, they might or could advise.

3.—*Perfect Tense*, ‘ May have.’*Singular.*

1. *Mōn-ŭērīm*, I may have advised.
2. *Mōn-ŭērīs*, thou mayst have advised.
3. *Mōn-ŭērīt*, he may have advised.

*Plural.*

1. *Mōn-ŭērīmūs*, we may have advised.
2. *Mōn-ŭērītīs*, ye or you may have advised.
3. *Mōn-ŭērīnt*, they may have advised.

4.—*Pluperfect Tense*, ‘ Might or could have.’*Singular.*

1. *Mōn-ŭīssēm*, I might or could have advised.
2. *Mōn-ŭīssēs*, thou mightst or couldst have advised.
3. *Mōn-ŭīssēt*, he might or could have advised.

*Plural.*

1. *Mōn-ŭīssēmūs*, we might or could have advised.
2. *Mōn-ŭīssētīs*, ye or you might or could have advised.
3. *Mōn-ŭīssēt*, they might or could have advised.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Present and Imperfect Tense.*

*Mõn-ērě, to advise.*

*Perfect and Pluperfect Tense.*

*Mõn-ũssě, to have advised.*

*Future Tense.*

*Mõn-ĩtũrũm ěssě, to be about to advise.*

GERUNDS.

*Mõn-ēndĩ, of advising.*

*Mõn-ēndō, in or by advising.*

*Mõn-ēndũm, to advise.*

SUPINES.

ACTIVE.—*Mõn-ĩtũm, to advise.*

PASSIVE.—*Mõn-ĩtũ, to be advised.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.—*Mõn-ēns, advising.*

FUTURE.—*Mõn-ĩtũrũs, about to advise.*

*Note.*—Periphrastic Conjugation, *mõn-ĩtũrũs (a, um), sum, eram, fui, ero, &c.*



THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Rěg-ō, 'I rule.'*

RULE.—The Third Conjugation of verbs active hath *ě* short before *rě* and *rĩs* ; as, *rěg-ěrě, rěg-ěrĩs.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

1.—*Present Tense*, 'Do, am.'*Singular.*

1. *Rĕg-ō*, I rule, or am ruling.
2. *Rĕg-īs*, thou rulest, or art ruling.
3. *Rĕg-īt*, he rules, or is ruling.

*Plural.*

1. *Rĕg-īmŭs*, we rule, or are ruling.
2. *Rĕg-ītis*, ye or you rule, or are ruling.
3. *Rĕg-ŭnt*, they rule, or are ruling.

2.—*Imperfect Tense*, 'Did, was.'*Singular.*

1. *Rĕg-ēbām*, I did rule, or was ruling.
2. *Rĕg-ēbās*, thou didst rule, or wast ruling.
3. *Rĕg-ēbāt*, he did rule, or was ruling.

*Plural.*

1. *Rĕg-ēbāmŭs*, we did rule, or were ruling.
2. *Rĕg-ēbātis*, ye or you did rule or were ruling.
3. *Rĕg-ēbānt*, they did rule, or were ruling.

3.—*Perfect Tense*, 'Have.'*Singular.*

1. *Rĕx-ī*, I have ruled.
2. *Rĕx-istī*, thou hast ruled.
3. *Rĕx-īt*, he has ruled.

*Plural.*

1. *Rĕx-īmŭs*, we have ruled.
2. *Rĕx-istis*, ye or you have ruled.
3. *Rĕx-ērŭnt*, v. *ērĕ*, they have ruled.

4.—*Pluperfect Tense*, 'Had.'

*Singular.*

1. *Rēx-ērām*, I had ruled.
2. *Rēx-ērās*, thou hadst ruled.
3. *Rēx-ērāt*, he had ruled.

*Plural.*

1. *Rēx-ērāmūs*, we had ruled.
2. *Rēx-ērātīs*, ye or you had ruled.
3. *Rēx-ērānt*, they had ruled.

5.—*First Future Tense*, 'Shall or will.'

*Singular.*

1. *Rēg-ām*, I shall or will rule.
2. *Rēg-ēs*, thou shalt or wilt rule.
3. *Rēg-ēt*, he shall or will rule.

*Plural.*

1. *Rēg-ēmūs*, we shall or will rule.
2. *Rēg-ētīs*, ye or you shall or will rule.
3. *Rēg-ēnt*, they shall or will rule.

6.—*Second Future, or Future Perfect Tense*,  
'Shall or will have.'

*Singular.*

1. *Rēx-ērō*, I shall or will have ruled.
2. *Rēx-ērīs*, thou shalt or wilt have ruled.
3. *Rēx-ērīt*, he shall or will have ruled.

*Plural.*

1. *Rēx-ērīmūs*, we shall or will have ruled.
2. *Rēx-ērītīs*, ye or you shall or will have ruled.
3. *Rēx-ērīnt*, they shall or will have ruled.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Singular.*

2. *Rĕg-ĕ, rĕg-ĭtō*, rule thou.
3. *Rĕg-ĭtō*, let him rule.

*Plural.*

2. *Rĕg-ĭtō, rĕg-ĭtōtĕ*, rule ye or you.
3. *Rĕg-ũntō*, let them rule.

## SUBJUNCTIVE, OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

1.—*Present Tense*, 'May or can.'*Singular.*

1. *Rĕg-ām*, I may or can rule,
2. *Rĕg-ās*, thou mayst or canst rule.
3. *Rĕg-ăt*, he may or can rule.

*Plural.*

1. *Rĕg-āmŭs*, we may or can rule.
2. *Rĕg-ătis*, ye or you may or can rule.
3. *Rĕg-ant*, they may or can rule.

2.—*Imperfect Tense*, 'Might or could.'*Singular.*

1. *Rĕg-ĕrēm*, I might or could rule.
2. *Rĕg-ĕrēs*, thou mightst or couldst rule.
3. *Rĕg-ĕrēt*, he might or could rule.

*Plural.*

1. *Rĕg-ĕrēmŭs*, we might or could rule.
2. *Rĕg-ĕrētis*, ye or you might or could rule.
3. *Rĕg-ĕrĕnt*, they might or could rule.

3.—*Perfect Tense*, ‘May have.’

*Singular.*

1. *Rēx-ērīm*, I may have ruled.
2. *Rēx-ērīs*, thou mayst have ruled.
3. *Rēx-ērīt*, he may have ruled.

*Plural.*

1. *Rēx-ērīmūs*, we may have ruled.
2. *Rēx-ērītīs*, ye or you may have ruled.
3. *Rēx-ērīnt*, they may have ruled.

4.—*Pluperfect Tense*, ‘Might or could have.’

*Singular.*

1. *Rēx-īssēm*, I might or could have ruled.
2. *Rēx-īssēs*, thou mightst or couldst have ruled.
3. *Rēx-īssēt*, he might or could have ruled.

*Plural.*

1. *Rēx-īssēmūs*, we might or could have ruled.
2. *Rēx-īssētīs*, ye or you might or could have ruled.
3. *Rēx-īssēnt*, they might or could have ruled.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Present and Imperfect Tense.*

*Rēg-ērē*, to rule.

*Perfect and Pluperfect Tense.*

*Rēx-īssē*, to have ruled.

*Future Tense.*

*Rēc-tūrūm ēssē*, to be about to rule.



## GERUNDS.

*Rēg-ēndī*, of ruling.*Rēg-ēndō*, in or by ruling.*Rēg-ēndūm*, to rule.

## SUPINES.

ACTIVE.—*Rēc-tūm*, to rule.PASSIVE.—*Rēc-tū*, to be ruled.

## PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.—*Rēg-ēns*, ruling.FUTURE.—*Rēc-tūrūs*, about to rule.

*Note.*—Periphrastic Conjugation, *rēc-tūrūs* (*a*, *um*), *sum*, *eram*, *fui*, *ero*, &c.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

*Aūd-īō*, 'I hear.'

RULE.—The Fourth Conjugation of verbs active hath *i* long before *rē* and *rīs*; as, *aūd-irē*, *aūd-irīs*.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

1.—*Present Tense*, 'Do, am.'*Singular.*

1. *Aūd-īō*, I hear, or am hearing.
2. *Aūd-īs*, thou hearest, or art hearing.
3. *Aūd-īt*, he hears, or is hearing.

*Plural.*

1. *Aūd-īmūs*, we hear, or are hearing.
2. *Aūd-ītīs*, ye or you hear, or are hearing.
3. *Aūd-iūnt*, they hear, or are hearing.

2.—*Imperfect Tense*, 'Did, was.'

*Singular.*

1. *Aūd-īēbām*, I did hear, or was hearing.
2. *Aūd-īēbās*, thou didst hear, or wast hearing.
3. *Aūd-īēbāt*, he did hear, or was hearing.

*Plural.*

1. *Aūd-īēbāmūs*, we did hear, or were hearing.
2. *Aūd-īēbātīs*, ye or you did hear, or were hearing.
3. *Aūd-īēbānt*, they did hear, or were hearing.

3.—*Perfect Tense*, 'Have.'

*Singular.*

1. *Aūd-īvī*, I have heard.
2. *Aūd-īvīstī*, thou hast heard.
3. *Aūd-īvīt*, he has heard.

*Plural.*

1. *Aūd-īvīmūs*, we have heard.
2. *Aūd-īvistīs*, ye or you have heard.
3. *Aūd-īvērūnt*, v. *ērē*, they have heard.

4.—*Pluperfect Tense*, 'Had.'

*Singular.*

1. *Aūd-īvērām*, I had heard.
2. *Aūd-īvērās*, thou hadst heard.
3. *Aūd-īvērāt*, he had heard.

*Plural.*

1. *Aūd-īvērāmūs*, we had heard.
2. *Aūd-īvērātīs*, ye or you had heard.
3. *Aūd-īvērānt*, they had heard.

5.—*First Future Tense*, 'Shall or will.'*Singular.*

1. *Aūd-iām*, I shall or will hear.
2. *Aūd-iēs*, thou shalt or wilt hear.
3. *Aūd-iēt*, he shall or will hear.

*Plural.*

1. *Aūd-iēmūs*, we shall or will hear.
2. *Aūd-iētīs*, ye or you shall or will hear.
3. *Aūd-iēnt*, they shall or will hear.

6.—*Second Future, or Future Perfect Tense*,  
'Shall or will have.'*Singular.*

1. *Aūd-ivērō*, I shall or will have heard.
2. *Aūd-ivērīs*, thou shalt or wilt have heard.
3. *Aūd-ivērīt*, he shall or will have heard.

*Plural.*

1. *Aūd-ivērīmūs*, we shall or will have heard.
2. *Aūd-ivērītīs*, ye or you shall or will have heard.
3. *Aūd-ivērīnt*, they shall or will have heard.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Singular.*

2. *Aūd-ī*, *aūd-ītō*, hear thou.
3. *Aūd-ītō*, let him hear.

*Plural.*

2. *Aūd-ītē*, *aūd-ītōtē*, hear ye or you.
3. *Aūd-iūntō*, let them hear.

SUBJUNCTIVE, OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

1.—*Present Tense*, 'May or can.'

*Singular.*

1. *Aūd-iām*, I may or can hear.
2. *Aūd-iās*, thou mayst or canst hear.
3. *Aūd-iāt*, he may or can hear.

*Plural.*

1. *Aūd-iāmūs*, we may or can hear.
2. *Aūd-iātīs*, ye or you may or can hear.
3. *Aūd-iānt*, they may or can hear.

2.—*Imperfect Tense*, 'Might or could.'

*Singular.*

1. *Aūd-irēm*, I might or could hear.
2. *Aūd-irēs*, thou mightst or couldst hear.
3. *Aūd-irēt*, he might or could hear.

*Plural.*

1. *Aūd-irēmūs*, we might or could hear.
2. *Aūd-irētīs*, ye or you might or could hear.
3. *Aūd-irēnt*, they might or could hear.

3.—*Perfect Tense*, 'May have.'

*Singular.*

1. *Aūd-ivērīm*, I may have heard.
2. *Aūd-ivērīs*, thou mayst have heard.
3. *Aūd-ivērīt*, he may have heard.

*Plural.*

1. *Aūd-ivērīmūs*, we may have heard.
2. *Aūd-ivērītīs*, ye or you may have heard.
3. *Aūd-ivērīnt*, they may have heard.

4.—*Pluperfect Tense*, 'Might or could have.'*Singular.*

1. *Aūd-īvīssēm*, I might have heard.
2. *Aūd-īvīssēs*, thou mightst have heard.
3. *Aūd-īvīssēt*, he might have heard.

*Plural.*

1. *Aūd-īvīssēmūs*, we might have heard.
2. *Aūd-īvīssētīs*, ye or you might have heard.
3. *Aūd-īvīssēnt*, they might have heard.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Present and Imperfect Tense.**Aūd-īrē*, to hear.*Perfect and Pluperfect Tense.**Aūd-īvīssē*, to have heard.*Future Tense.**Aūd-ītūrūm ēssē*, to be about to hear.

## GERUNDS.

*Aūd-īēndī*, of hearing.*Aūd-īēndō*, in or by hearing.*Aūd-īēndūm*, to hear.

## SUPINES.

ACTIVE.—*Aūd-ītūm*, to hear.PASSIVE.—*Aūd-ītū*, to be heard.

## PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.—*Aūd-īēns*, hearing.FUTURE.—*Aūd-ītūrūs*, about to hear.

*Note.*—Periphrastic Conjugation, *aūd-ītūrūs* (*a, um*), *sum, eram, fui, ero, &c.*

DECLENSION OF REGULAR VERBS.

*Passive Voice.*

1. *Ām-ōr, ām-ātūs sum v. fui, ām-ārī, ām-ātūs, ām-āndūs, 'to be loved.'*

2. *Mōn-ēōr, mōn-ītūs sum v. fui, mōn-ērī, mōn-ītūs, mōn-ēndūs, 'to be advised.'*

3. *Rēg-ōr, rēc-tūs sum v. fui, rēg-ī, rēc-tūs, rēg-ēndūs, 'to be ruled.'*

4. *Aūd-īōr, aūd-ītūs sum v. fui, aūd-īrī, aūd-ītūs, aūd-īēndūs, 'to be heard.'*

FIRST CONJUGATION.

*Ām-ōr, 'I am loved.'*

1.—*Present Tense, 'Am.'*

*Singular.*

1. *Ām-ōr, I am loved.*
2. *Ām-ārīs, v. ārē, thou art loved.*
3. *Ām-ātūr, he is loved.*

*Plural.*

1. *Ām-āmūr, we are loved.*
2. *Ām-āmīnī, ye or you are loved.*
3. *Ām-āntūr, they are loved.*

2.—*Imperfect Tense, 'Was.'*

*Singular.*

1. *Ām-ābūr, I was loved.*
2. *Ām-ābārīs, v. ārē, thou wast loved.*
3. *Ām-ābātūr, he was loved.*

*Plural.*

1. *Ām-ābāmūr, we were loved.*
2. *Ām-ābāmīnī, ye or you were loved.*
3. *Ām-ābāntūr, they were loved.*

3.—*Perfect Tense*, 'Have been.'*Singular.*

1. *Ām-ātus sum*, v. *fui*, I have been loved.
2. *Ām-ātus es*, v. *fuisti*, thou hast been loved.
3. *Ām-ātus est*, v. *fuit*, he has been loved.

*Plural.*

1. *Ām-ātī sumus*, v. *fuimus*, we have been loved.
2. *Ām-ātī estis*, v. *fuistis*, ye or you have been loved.
3. *Ām-ātī sunt*, v. *fuērunt* v. *ēre*, they have been loved

4.—*Pluperfect Tense*, 'Had been.'*Singular.*

1. *Ām-ātus eram*, v. *fueram*, I had been loved.
2. *Ām-ātus eras*, v. *fueras*, thou hadst been loved.
3. *Ām-ātus erat*, v. *fuerat*, he had been loved.

*Plural.*

1. *Ām-ātī eramus*, v. *fueramus*, we had been loved.
2. *Ām-ātī eratis*, v. *fueratis*, ye or you had been loved.
3. *Ām-ātī erant*, v. *fuerant*, they had been loved.

5.—*First Future Tense*, 'Shall or will be.'*Singular.*

1. *Ām-ābōr*, I shall or will be loved.
2. *Ām-ābēris*, v. *ērē*, thou shalt or wilt be loved.
3. *Ām-ābitūr*, he shall or will be loved.

*Plural.*

1. *Ām-ābimūr*, we shall or will be loved.
2. *Ām-ābimīnī*, ye or you shall or will be loved.
3. *Ām-ābuntūr*, they shall or will be loved.

6.—*Second Future, or Future Perfect Tense,*  
‘Shall or will have been.’

*Singular.*

1. *Ām-ātūs ero*, v. *fuero*, I shall or will have been loved.
2. *Ām-ātūs eris*, v. *fuēris*, thou shalt have been loved.
3. *Ām-ātūs erit*, v. *fuērit*, he shall have been loved.

*Plural.*

1. *Ām-ātī erimus*, v. *fuērimus*, we shall or will have been loved.
2. *Ām-ātī eritis*, v. *fuēritis*, ye or you shall have been, &c.
3. *Ām-ātī erint*, v. *fuērint*, they shall have been loved.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Singular.*

2. *Ām-ārē*, *ām-ātōr*, be thou loved.
3. *Ām-ātōr*, let him be loved.

*Plural.*

2. *Ām-āmīnī*, *ām-āmīnōr*, be ye or you loved.
3. *Ām-āntōr*, let them be loved.

SUBJUNCTIVE, OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

1.—*Present Tense*, ‘May or can be.’

*Singular.*

1. *Ām-ēr*, I may or can be loved.
2. *Ām-ērīs*, v. *ērē*, thou mayst or canst be loved.
3. *Ām-ētūr*, he may or can be loved.

*Plural.*

1. *Ām-ēmūr*, we may or can be loved.
2. *Ām-ēmīnī*, ye or you may or can be loved.
3. *Ām-ēntūr*, they may or can be loved.



2.—*Imperfect Tense*, ‘ Might or could be.’*Singular.*

1. *Ām-ārēr*, I might or could be loved.
2. *Ām-ārērīs*, v. *ērē*, thou mightst or couldst be loved.
3. *Ām-ārētūr*, he might or could be loved.

*Plural.*

1. *Ām-ārēmūr*, we might or could be loved.
2. *Ām-ārēmīnī*, ye or you might or could be loved.
3. *Ām-ārētūr*, they might or could be loved.

3.—*Perfect Tense*, ‘ May have been.’*Singular.*

1. *Ām-ātūs sim*, v. *fuerim*, I may have been loved.
2. *Ām-ātūs sis*, v. *fueris*, thou mayst have been loved.
3. *Ām-ātūs sit*, v. *fuerit*, he may have been loved.

*Plural.*

1. *Ām-ātī simus*, v. *fuerimus*, we may have been loved.
2. *Ām-ātī sitis*, v. *fueritis*, ye or you may have been, &c.
3. *Ām-ātī sint*, v. *fuerint*, they may have been loved.

4.—*Pluperfect Tense*, ‘ Might or could have been.’*Singular.*

1. *Ām-ātūs essem*, v. *fuissem*, I might or could have been loved.
2. *Ām-ātūs esses*, v. *fuisses*, thou mightst or couldst, &c.
3. *Ām-ātūs esset*, v. *fuisset*, he might or could, &c.

*Plural.*

1. *Ām-ātī essemus*, v. *fuissemus*, we might or could have been loved.
2. *Ām-ātī essetis*, v. *fuissetis*, ye or you might or could, &c.
3. *Ām-ātī essent*, v. *fuisSENT*, they might or could, &c.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Present and Imperfect Tense.*

*Ām-ārī*, to be loved.

*Perfect and Pluperfect Tense.*

*Ām-ātūm esse*, v. *fuisse*, to have been loved.

*Future Tense.*

*Ām-ātūm irī*, to be about to be loved.

PARTICIPLES.

PAST.—*Ām-ātūs*, loved, or having been loved.

FUTURE.—*Ām-āndūs*, that must be loved.

*Note.*—Periphrastic Conjugation, *ām-āndūs* (*a*, *um*), *sum*, *eram*, *fui*, *ero*, &c.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

*Mōn-ēōr*, 'I am advised.'

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1.—*Present Tense*, 'Am.'

*Singular.*

1. *Mōn-ēōr*, I am advised.
2. *Mōn-ērīs*, v. *ēre*, thou art advised.
3. *Mōn-ētūr*, he is advised.

*Plural.*

1. *Mōn-ēmūr*, we are advised.
2. *Mōn-ēmīnī*, ye or you are advised.
3. *Mōn-ētūr*, they are advised.

2.—*Imperfect Tense*, 'Was.'*Singular.*

1. *Mön-ēbār*, I was advised.
2. *Mön-ēbārīs*, v. *ārē*, thou wast advised.
3. *Mön-ēbātūr*, he was advised.

*Plural.*

1. *Mön-ēbāmūr*, we were advised.
2. *Mön-ēbāmīnī*, ye or you were advised.
3. *Mön-ēbāntūr*, they were advised.

3.—*Perfect Tense*, 'Have been.'*Singular.*

1. *Mön-ītūs sum*, v. *fui*, I have been advised.
2. *Mön-ītūs es*, v. *fuisti*, thou hast been advised.
3. *Mön-ītūs est*, v. *fuit*, he has been advised.

*Plural.*

1. *Mön-ītī sumus*, v. *fuimus*, we have been advised.
2. *Mön-ītī estis*, v. *fuistis*, ye or you have been advised.
3. *Mön-ītī sunt*, v. *fuērunt*, v. *ēre*, they have been, &c.

4.—*Pluperfect Tense*, 'Had been.'*Singular.*

1. *Mön-ītūs eram*, v. *fueram*, I had been advised.
2. *Mön-ītūs eras*, v. *fueras*, thou hadst been advised.
3. *Mön-ītūs erat*, v. *fuerat*, he had been advised.

*Plural.*

1. *Mön-ītī eramus*, v. *fueramus*, we had been advised.
2. *Mön-ītī eratis*, v. *fueratis*, ye or you had been, &c.
3. *Mön-ītī erant*, v. *fuerant*, they had been advised.

5.—*First Future Tense*, ‘*Shall or will be.*’

*Singular.*

1. *Mön-ēbör*, I shall or will be advised.
2. *Mön-ēbēris*, v. *ērē*, thou shalt or wilt be advised.
3. *Mön-ēbitūr*, he shall or will be advised.

*Plural.*

1. *Mön-ēbimūr*, we shall or will be advised.
2. *Mön-ēbimīnā*, ye or you shall or will be advised.
3. *Mön-ēbuntūr*, they shall or will be advised.

6.—*Second Future, or Future Perfect Tense*,  
‘*Shall or will have been.*’

*Singular.*

1. *Mön-ītūs ero*, v. *fuero*, I shall or will have been advised.
2. *Mön-ītūs eris*, v. *fueris*, thou shalt have been advised.
3. *Mön-ītūs erit*, v. *fuerit*, he shall have been advised.

*Plural.*

1. *Mön-ītī erimus*, v. *fuerimus*, we shall or will have been advised.
2. *Mön-ītī eritis*, v. *fueritis*, ye or you shall have been advised.
3. *Mön-ītī erint*, v. *fuerint*, they shall have been advised.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Singular.*

2. *Mön-ērē*, *mön-ētör*, be thou advised.
3. *Mön-ētör*, let him be advised.

*Plural.*

2. *Mön-ēmīnā*, *mön-ēmīnör*, be ye or you advised.
3. *Mön-ēntör*, let them be advised.

## SUBJUNCTIVE, OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. — *Present Tense*, 'May or can be.'*Singular.*

1. *Mōn-ěār*, I may or can be advised.
2. *Mōn-ěārīs*, v. *ārě*, thou mayst or canst be advised.
3. *Mōn-ěātūr*, he may or can be advised.

*Plural.*

1. *Mōn-ěāmūr*, we may or can be advised.
2. *Mōn-ěāmīnī*, ye or you may or can be advised.
3. *Mōn-ěāntūr*, they may or can be advised.

2.—*Imperfect Tense*, 'Might or could be.'*Singular.*

1. *Mōn-ērēr*, I might or could be advised.
2. *Mōn-ērērīs*, v. *ērě*, thou mightst or couldst be advised.
3. *Mōn-ērētūr*, he might or could be advised.

*Plural.*

1. *Mōn-ērēmūr*, we might or could be advised.
2. *Mōn-ērēmīnī*, ye or you might or could be advised.
3. *Mōn-ērēntūr*, they might or could be advised.

3.—*Perfect Tense*, 'May have been.'*Singular.*

1. *Mōn-ītūs sim*, v. *fuerim*, I may have been advised.
2. *Mōn-ītūs sis*, v. *fueris*, thou mayst have been advised.
3. *Mōn-ītūs sit*, v. *fuerit*, he may have been advised.

*Plural.*

1. *Mōn-ītī simus*, v. *fuerimus*, we may have been advised.
2. *Mōn-ītī sitis*, v. *fueritis*, ye or you may have been, &c.
3. *Mōn-ītī sint*, v. *fuerint*, they may have been advised.

4.—*Pluperfect Tense*, ‘ Might or could have been.’

*Singular.*

1. *Mön-ītūs essem*, v. *fuissem*, I might or could have been advised.
2. *Mön-ītūs esses*, v. *fuissets*, thou mightst or couldst have been advised.
3. *Mön-ītūs esset*, v. *fuisset*, he might or could have been advised.

*Plural.*

1. *Mön-ītī essemus*, v. *fuissemus*, we might or could have been advised.
2. *Mön-ītī essetis*, v. *fuissetis*, ye or you might or could have been advised.
3. *Mön-ītī essent*, v. *fuisSENT*, they might or could have been advised.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Present and Imperfect Tense.*

*Mön-ērī*, to be advised.

*Perfect and Pluperfect Tense.*

*Mön-ītūm esse*, v. *fuisse*, to have been advised.

*Future Tense.*

*Mön-ītūm īrī*, to be about to be advised.

PARTICIPLES.

PAST.—*Mön-ītūs*, advised, or having been advised.

FUTURE.—*Mön-ēndūs*, that must be advised.

*Note.*—Periphrastic Conjugation, *Mön-ēndūs* (*a, um*), *sum, eram, fui, ero, &c.*

## THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Rĕg-ŏr*, 'I am ruled.'

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

1.—*Present Tense*, 'Am.'*Singular.*

1. *Rĕg-ŏr*, I am ruled.
2. *Rĕg-ŏrĭs*, v. *ŏrĕ*, thou art ruled.
3. *Rĕg-ĭtŭr*, he is ruled.

*Plural.*

1. *Rĕg-ĭmŭr*, we are ruled.
2. *Rĕg-ĭmĭnĭ*, ye or you are ruled.
3. *Rĕg-ŭntŭr*, they are ruled.

2.—*Imperfect Tense*, 'Was.'*Singular.*

1. *Rĕg-ĕbăr*, I was ruled.
2. *Rĕg-ĕbărĭs*, v. *ărĕ*, thou wast ruled.
3. *Rĕg-ĕbătŭr*, he was ruled.

*Plural.*

1. *Rĕg-ĕbāmŭr*, we were ruled.
2. *Rĕg-ĕbāmĭnĭ*, ye or you were ruled.
3. *Rĕg-ĕbāntŭr*, they were ruled.

3.—*Perfect Tense*, 'Have been.'*Singular.*

1. *Rĕc-tŭs sum*, v. *fui*, I have been ruled.
2. *Rĕc-tŭs es*, v. *fuisti*, thou hast been ruled.
3. *Rĕc-tŭs est*, v. *fuit*, he has been ruled.

*Plural.*

1. *Rēc-tī sumus*, v. *fuimus*, we have been ruled.
2. *Rēc-tī estis*, v. *fuistis*, ye or you have been ruled.
3. *Rēc-tī sunt*, v. *fuērunt*, v. *ēre*, they have been ruled.

4.—*Pluperfect Tense*, ‘Had been.’

*Singular.*

1. *Rēc-tūs eram*, v. *fueram*, I had been ruled.
2. *Rēc-tūs eras*, v. *fueras*, thou hadst been ruled.
3. *Rēc-tūs erat*, v. *fuerat*, he had been ruled.

*Plural.*

1. *Rēc-tī eramus*, v. *fueramus*, we had been ruled.
2. *Rēc-tī eratis*, v. *fueratis*, ye or you had been ruled.
3. *Rēc-tī erant*, v. *fuerant*, they had been ruled.

5.—*First Future Tense*, ‘Shall or will be.’

*Singular.*

1. *Rěg-ār*, I shall or will be ruled.
2. *Rěg-ērīs*, v. *ērē*, thou shalt or wilt be ruled.
3. *Rěg-ētūr*, he shall or will be ruled.

*Plural.*

1. *Rěg-ēmūr*, we shall or will be ruled.
2. *Rěg-ēmīnī*, ye or you shall or will be ruled.
3. *Rěg-ētūr*, they shall or will be ruled.

6.—*Second Future, or Future Perfect Tense*,  
‘Shall or will have been.’

*Singular.*

1. *Rēc-tūs ero*, v. *fuero*, I shall or will have been ruled.
2. *Rēc-tūs eris*, v. *fueris*, thou shalt have been ruled.
3. *Rēc-tūs erit*, v. *fuerit*, he shall have been ruled.

*Plural.*

1. *Rēc-tī erimus*, v. *fuerimus*, we shall or will have been ruled.
2. *Rēc-tī eritis*, v. *fueritis*, ye or you shall have been ruled.
3. *Rēc-tī erunt*, v. *fuerint*, they shall have been ruled.



## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Singular.*

2. *Rĕg-ĕrĕ, rĕg-ĭtŏr*, be thou ruled.
3. *Rĕg-ĭtŏr*, let him be ruled.

*Plural.*

2. *Rĕg-ĭmĭnĭ, rĕg-ĭmĭnŏr*, be ye or you ruled.
3. *Rĕg-ũntŏr*, let them be ruled.

## SUBJUNCTIVE, OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. — *Present Tense*, 'May or can be.'

*Singular.*

1. *Rĕg-ĕr*, I may or can be ruled.
2. *Rĕg-ĕrĭs*, v. *ĕrĕ*, thou mayst or canst be ruled.
3. *Rĕg-ĕtŭr*, he may or can be ruled.

*Plural.*

1. *Rĕg-ĕmŭr*, we may or can be ruled.
2. *Rĕg-ĕmĭnĭ*, ye or you may or can be ruled.
3. *Rĕg-ĕntŭr*, they may or can be ruled.

2. — *Imperfect Tense*, 'Might or could be.'

*Singular.*

1. *Rĕg-ĕrĕr*, I might or could be ruled.
2. *Rĕg-ĕrĕrĭs*, v. *ĕrĕ*, thou mightst or couldst be ruled.
3. *Rĕg-ĕrĕtŭr*, he might or could be ruled.

*Plural.*

1. *Rĕg-ĕrĕmŭr*, we might or could be ruled.
2. *Rĕg-ĕrĕmĭnĭ*, ye or you might or could be ruled.
3. *Rĕg-ĕrĕntŭr*, they might or could be ruled.

3.—*Perfect Tense*, 'May have been.'

*Singular.*

1. *Rēc-tūs sim*, v. *fuierim*, I may have been ruled.
2. *Rēc-tūs sis*, v. *fuieris*, thou mayst have been ruled.
3. *Rēc-tūs sit*, v. *fuierit*, he may have been ruled.

*Plural.*

1. *Rēc-tī simus*, v. *fuierimus*, we may have been ruled.
2. *Rēc-tī sitis*, v. *fuieritis*, ye or you may have been ruled.
3. *Rēc-tī sint*, v. *fuierint*, they may have been ruled.

4.—*Pluperfect Tense*, 'Might or could have been.'

*Singular.*

1. *Rēc-tūs essem*, v. *fuissem*, I might or could have been ruled.
2. *Rēc-tūs esses*, v. *fuiesses*, thou mightst or couldst have been ruled.
3. *Rēc-tūs esset*, v. *fuiisset*, he might or could have been ruled.

*Plural.*

1. *Rēc-tī essemus*, v. *fuissemus*, we might or could have been ruled.
2. *Rēc-tī essetis*, v. *fuiissetis*, ye or you might or could have been ruled.
3. *Rēc-tī essent*, v. *fuiissent*, they might or could have been ruled.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Present and Imperfect Tense.*

*Rēc-ī*, to be ruled.

*Perfect and Pluperfect Tense.*

*Rēc-tūm esse*, v. *fuisse*, to have been ruled.

*Future Tense.**Rēc-tūm irī*, to be about to be ruled.

## PARTICIPLES.

PAST.—*Rēc-tūs*, ruled, or having been ruled.FUTURE.—*Rēg-ēndūs*, that must be ruled.*Note.* — Periphrastic Conjugation, *rēg-ēndūs* (*a, um*), *sum, eram, fui, ero, &c.*

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

*Aūd-īor*, 'I am heard.'

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. — *Present Tense*, 'Am.'*Singular.*

1. *Aūd-īor*, I am heard.
2. *Aūd-īris*, v. *irē*, thou art heard.
3. *Aūd-ītūr*, he is heard.

*Plural.*

1. *Aūd-īmūr*, we are heard.
2. *Aūd-īmīnī*, ye or you are heard.
3. *Aūd-īuntūr*, they are heard.

2. — *Imperfect Tense*, 'Was.'*Singular.*

1. *Aūd-īēbār*, I was heard.
2. *Aūd-īēbāris*, v. *ārē*, thou wast heard.
3. *Aūd-īēbātūr*, he was heard.

*Plural.*

1. *Aūd-īēbāmūr*, we were heard.
2. *Aūd-īēbāmīnī*, ye or you were heard.
3. *Aūd-īēbāntūr*, they were heard.

3.—*Perfect Tense*, 'Have been.'

*Singular.*

1. *Aūd-ītūs sum*, v. *fui*, I have been heard.
2. *Aūd-ītūs es*, v. *fuisti*, thou hast been heard.
3. *Aūd-ītūs est*, v. *fuit*, he has been heard.

*Plural.*

1. *Aūd-ītī sumus*, v. *fuimus*, we have been heard.
2. *Aūd-ītī estis*, v. *fuistis*, ye or you have been heard.
3. *Aūd-ītī sunt*, v. *fuērunt*, v. *ēre*, they have been heard.

4.—*Pluperfect Tense*, 'Had been.'

*Singular.*

1. *Aūd-ītūs eram*, v. *fueram*, I had been heard.
2. *Aūd-ītūs eras*, v. *fueras*, thou hadst been heard.
3. *Aūd-ītūs erat*, v. *fuerat*, he had been heard.

*Plural.*

1. *Aūd-ītī eramus*, v. *fueraamus*, we had been heard.
2. *Aūd-ītī eratis*, v. *fueraatis*, ye or you had been heard.
3. *Aūd-ītī erant*, v. *fueraant*, they had been heard.

5.—*First Future Tense*, 'Shall or will be.'

*Singular.*

1. *Aūd-īār*, I shall or will be heard.
2. *Aūd-īēris*, v. *ērē*, thou shalt or wilt be heard.
3. *Aūd-īētūr*, he shall or will be heard.

*Plural.*

1. *Aūd-īēmūr*, we shall or will be heard.
2. *Aūd-īēmānī*, ye or you shall or will be heard.
3. *Aūd-īentūr*, they shall or will be heard.

6.—*Second Future, or Future Perfect Tense,*  
‘Shall or will have been.’

*Singular.*

1. *Aūd-ītūs ero*, v. *fuero*, I shall or will have been heard.
2. *Aūd-ītūs eris*, v. *fuieris*, thou shalt have been heard.
3. *Aūd-ītūs erit*, v. *fuierit*, he shall have been heard.

*Plural.*

1. *Aūd-ītī erimus*, v. *fuierimus*, we shall or will have been heard.
2. *Aūd-ītī eritis*, v. *fuieritis*, ye or you shall have been, &c.
3. *Aūd-ītī erunt*, v. *fuierint*, they shall have been heard.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Singular.*

2. *Aūd-irē*, *aūd-ītōr*, be thou heard.
3. *Aūd-ītōr*, let him be heard.

*Plural.*

2. *Aūd-īmīnī*, *aūd-īmīnōr*, be ye or you heard.
3. *Aūd-īūntōr*, let them be heard.

SUBJUNCTIVE, OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. — *Present Tense*, ‘May or can be.’

*Singular.*

1. *Aūd-īār*, I may or can be heard.
2. *Aūd-īārīs*, v. *ārē*, thou mayst or canst be heard.
3. *Aūd-īātūr*, he may or can be heard.

*Plural.*

1. *Aūd-īāmūr*, we may or can be heard.
2. *Aūd-īāmīnī*, ye or you may or can be heard.
3. *Aūd-īāntūr*, they may or can be heard.

2.—*Imperfect Tense*, 'Might or could be.'

*Singular.*

1. *Aūd-irēr*, I might or could be heard.
2. *Aūd-irērīs*, v. *ērē*, thou mightst or couldst be heard.
3. *Aūd-irētūr*, he might or could be heard.

*Plural.*

1. *Aūd-irēmūr*, we might or could be heard.
2. *Aūd-irēmīnī*, ye or you might or could be heard.
3. *Aūd-irētūr*, they might or could be heard.

3.—*Perfect Tense*, 'May have been.'

*Singular.*

1. *Aūd-ītūs sim*, v. *fuierim*, I may have been heard.
2. *Aūd-ītūs sis*, v. *fuieris*, thou mayst have been heard.
3. *Aūd-ītūs sit*, v. *fuierit*, he may have been heard.

*Plural.*

1. *Aūd-ītī simus*, v. *fuierimus*, we may have been heard.
2. *Aūd-ītī sitis*, v. *fuieritis*, ye or you may have been heard.
3. *Aūd-ītī sint*, v. *fuierint*, they may have been heard.

4.—*Pluperfect Tense*, 'Might or could have been.'

*Singular.*

1. *Aūd-ītūs essem*, v. *fuissem*, I might or could have been heard.
2. *Aūd-ītūs esses*, v. *fuissets*, thou mightst or couldst have been heard.
3. *Aūd-ītūs esset*, v. *fuisset*, he might or could have been, &c.

*Plural.*

1. *Aūd-ītī essemus*, v. *fuissemus*, we might or could have been heard.
2. *Aūd-ītī essetis*, v. *fuissetis*, ye or you might or could have been heard.
3. *Aūd-ītī essent*, v. *fuisSENT*, they might or could have been heard.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Present and Imperfect Tense.**Aūd-īrī*, to be heard.*Perfect and Pluperfect Tense.**Aūd-ītūm esse*, v. *fuisse*, to have been heard.*Future Tense.**Aūd-ītūm īrī*, to be about to be heard.

## PARTICIPLES.

PAST.—*Aūd-ītūs*, heard, or having been heard.FUTURE.—*Aūd-īēndūs*, that must be heard.

*Note.*—Periphrastic Conjugation, *aūd-īēndūs* (*a, um*),  
*sum, eram, fui, ero, &c.*

---

## DEPONENT VERBS.

Deponent verbs are conjugated like verbs passive, except that they have a participle for all three states of an action: that in *ns* (*hortans*), for an action not completed; that in *tus* (*hortatus*), for an action completed; and that in *urus* (*hortaturus*), for an action about to take place.

*Note.*—Deponent verbs which have an active sense are the only verbs that can have a participle in *dus*; as, *hortandus*.

Of neuter verbs, as *loquor*, &c., the participle of the neuter gender is only used; as, *loquendum est*. Deponent verbs have gerunds and supines.

DECLENSION OF VERBS IRREGULAR.

Some verbs vary from the general rule, and are formed in the following manner :—

1. *Pōs-sūm, pōt-ūi, pōs-sē, pōt-ēns*, ‘to be able.’
2. *Vōl-ō, vōl-ūi, vōl-lē, vōl-ēndi, vōl-ēndō, vōl-ēndūm, vōl-ēns*, ‘to be willing.’
3. *Nōl-ō, nōl-ūi, nōl-lē, nōl-ēndi, nōl-ēndō, nōl-ēndūm, nōl-ēns*, ‘to be unwilling.’
4. *Māl-ō, māl-ūi, māl-lē, māl-ēndi, māl-ēndo, māl-ēndūm, māl-ēns*, ‘to prefer, or to be more willing.’
5. *Ēd-ō, ēd-i, ēd-ērē vel ēs-sē, ēd-ēndi, ēd-ēndō, ēd-ēndūm, ēs-sūm, ēs-ū, ēd-ēns, ēs-ūrūs*, ‘to eat.’
6. *Fēr-ō, tū-li, fēr-rē, fēr-ēndi, fēr-ēndō, fēr-ēndūm, lā-tūm, lā-tū, fēr-ēns, lā-tūrūs*, ‘to bear, or suffer.’
7. *Fēr-ōr, lā-tūs sūm vel fūi, fēr-rī, lā-tūs, fēr-ēndūs*, ‘to be borne or suffered.’
8. *Fī-ō, fāc-tūs sūm vel fūi, fī-ērī, fāc-tūs, fāc-iēndūs*, ‘to be made or done.’
9. *Ē-ō, i-vi, i-rē, ē-ūndi, ē-ūndō, ē-ūndūm, i-tūm, i-tū, i-ēns, i-tūrūs*, to go.

1. *Pōs-sūm*, ‘I am able.’

*Pōs-sūm* is derived from *pōtis* and *sūm*.

INDICATIVE MOOD

1. — <i>Present Tense</i> , ‘I am able.’		2. — <i>Imperfect Tense</i> , ‘I was able.’	
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Pōs-sūm.</i>	<i>Pōs-sūmūs.</i>	<i>Pōt-ērām.</i>	<i>Pōt-ērāmus.</i>
<i>Pōt-ēs.</i>	<i>Pōt-ētis.</i>	<i>Pōt-ērās.</i>	<i>Pōt-ērātis.</i>
<i>Pōt-ēst.</i>	<i>Pōs-sūnt.</i>	<i>Pōt-ērāt.</i>	<i>Pōt-ērānt.</i>



3. — *Perfect Tense*,  
'I have been able.'

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Pōi-ū.</i>	<i>Pōt-ūimūs.</i>
<i>Pōt-ūistī.</i>	<i>Pōt-ūistīs.</i>
<i>Pōt-ūit.</i>	<i>Pōt-ūērūnt,</i> v. <i>ērē.</i>

4. — *Pluperfect Tense*,  
'I had been able.'

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Pōt-ūērām.</i>	<i>Pōt-ūērāmūs.</i>
<i>Pōt-ūērās.</i>	<i>Pōt-ūērātīs.</i>
<i>Pōt-ūērāt.</i>	<i>Pōt-ūērānt.</i>

5. — *First Future Tense*,  
'I shall or will be able.'

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Pōt-ērō.</i>	<i>Pōt-ērīmūs.</i>
<i>Pōt-ērīs.</i>	<i>Pōt-ērītīs.</i>
<i>Pōt-ērīt.</i>	<i>Pōt-ērūnt.</i>

6. — *Second Future, or  
Future Perfect Tense*,  
'I shall or will have been  
able.'

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Pōt-ūērō.</i>	<i>Pōt-ūērīmūs.</i>
<i>Pōt-ūērīs.</i>	<i>Pōt-ūērītīs.</i>
<i>Pōt-ūērīt.</i>	<i>Pōt-ūērīnt.</i>

*Pōs-sūm* has no Imperative Mood.

SUBJUNCTIVE, OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. — *Present Tense*,  
'I may or can be able.'

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Pōs-sīm.</i>	<i>Pōs-sīmūs.</i>
<i>Pōs-sīs.</i>	<i>Pōs-sītīs.</i>
<i>Pōs-sīt.</i>	<i>Pōs-sīnt.</i>

2. — *Imperfect Tense*,  
'I might or could be able.'

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Pōs-sēm.</i>	<i>Pōs-sēmūs.</i>
<i>Pōs-sēs.</i>	<i>Pōs-sētīs.</i>
<i>Pōs-sēt.</i>	<i>Pōs-sēnt.</i>

3. — *Perfect Tense*,  
'I may have been able.'

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Pōt-ūērīm.</i>	<i>Pōt-ūērīmūs.</i>
<i>Pōt-ūērīs.</i>	<i>Pōt-ūērītīs.</i>
<i>Pōt-ūērīt.</i>	<i>Pōt-ūērīnt.</i>

4. — *Pluperfect Tense*,  
'I might or could have  
been able.'

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Pōt-ūīssēm.</i>	<i>Pōt-ūīssēmūs.</i>
<i>Pōt-ūīssēs.</i>	<i>Pōt-ūīssētīs.</i>
<i>Pōt-ūīssēt.</i>	<i>Pōt-ūīssēnt.</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Present and Imperfect Tense.*

*Pōs-sě*, to be able.

*Perfect and Pluperfect Tense.*

*Pōt-ūissě*, to have been able.

PARTICIPLE.

PRESENT.—*Pōt-ēns*, being able (*become an adjective*).

*Note 1.*—*Pōssūm* wants the future tense of the infinitive mood, and has no gerunds or supines.

*Note 2.*—*Pōssūm* has no passive voice, but *potestur* is found among old writers with a passive infinitive.

2. *Vō-lō*, 'I am willing.'

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1.—*Present Tense*,  
'I am willing.'

*Sing.*

*Plur.*

*Vōl-ō.*

*Vōl-ūmūs.*

*Vīs.*

*Vūl-tīs.*

*Vūlt.*

*Vōl-ūnt.*

3.—*Perfect Tense*,  
'I have been willing.'

*Sing.*

*Plur.*

*Vōl-ūi.*

*Vōl-ūimūs.*

*Vōl-ūistī.*

*Vōl-ūistīs.*

*Vōl-ūit.*

*Vōl-ūērūnt,*  
*vel ērē.*

2.—*Imperfect Tense*,  
'I was willing.'

*Sing.*

*Plur.*

*Vōl-ēbām.*

*Vōl-ēbāmūs.*

*Vōl-ēbās.*

*Vōl-ēbātīs.*

*Vōl-ēbāt.*

*Vōl-ēbānt.*

4.—*Pluperfect Tense*,  
'I had been willing.'

*Sing.*

*Plur.*

*Vōl-ūērām.*

*Vōl-ūērāmūs.*

*Vōl-ūērās.*

*Vōl-ūērātīs.*

*Vōl-ūērāt.*

*Vōl-ūērānt.*

5.—*First Future Tense,*

‘I shall or will be  
willing.’

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Völ-ām.</i>	<i>Völ-ēmūs.</i>
<i>Völ-ēs.</i>	<i>Völ-ētis.</i>
<i>Völ-ēt.</i>	<i>Völ-ēnt.</i>

6.—*Second Future, or  
Future Perfect Tense.*

‘I shall or will have been  
willing.’

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Völ-ūērō.</i>	<i>Völ-ūērīmūs.</i>
<i>Völ-ūērīs.</i>	<i>Völ-ūērītis.</i>
<i>Völ-ūērīt.</i>	<i>Völ-ūērīnt.</i>

*Vö-lō* has no Imperative Mood.

## SUBJUNCTIVE, OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

1.—*Present Tense,*

‘I am or can be willing.’

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Vël-īm.</i>	<i>Vël-īmūs.</i>
<i>Vël-īs.</i>	<i>Vël-ītis.</i>
<i>Vël-īt.</i>	<i>Vël-īnt.</i>

3.—*Perfect Tense,*

‘I may have been willing.’

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Völ-ūērīm.</i>	<i>Völ-ūērīmūs.</i>
<i>Völ-ūērīs.</i>	<i>Völ-ūērītis.</i>
<i>Völ-ūērīt.</i>	<i>Völ-ūērīnt.</i>

2.—*Imperfect Tense,*

‘I might or could be  
willing.’

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Vël-lēm.</i>	<i>Vël-lēmūs.</i>
<i>Vël-lēs.</i>	<i>Vël-lētis.</i>
<i>Vël-lēt.</i>	<i>Vël-lēnt.</i>

4.—*Pluperfect Tense,*

‘I might or could have been  
willing.’

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Völ-ūīssēm.</i>	<i>Völ-ūīssēmūs.</i>
<i>Völ-ūīssēs.</i>	<i>Völ-ūīssētis.</i>
<i>Völ-ūīssēt.</i>	<i>Völ-ūīssēnt.</i>

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Present and Imperfect Tense.*—*Vël-lē*, to be willing.

*Perf. and Pluperf. Tense.*—*Völ-ūīssē*, to have been willing.

*Note.*—*Vö-lō* wants the future tense of the infinitive mood, as it has no supine.

## PARTICIPLE.

*PRESENT.*—*Völ-ēns*, being willing.



## SUBJUNCTIVE, OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

1.—*Present Tense*,  
'I may or can be unwilling.'

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Nōl-īm.</i>	<i>Nōl-īmūs.</i>
<i>Nōl-īs.</i>	<i>Nōl-ītis.</i>
<i>Nōl-īt.</i>	<i>Nōl-īnt.</i>

2.—*Imperfect Tense*,  
'I might or could be unwilling.'

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Nōl-lēm.</i>	<i>Nōl-lēmūs.</i>
<i>Nōl-lēs.</i>	<i>Nōl-lētis.</i>
<i>Nōl-lēt.</i>	<i>Nōl-lēnt.</i>

3.—*Perfect Tense*,  
'I may have been unwilling.'

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Nōl-ŭērīm.</i>	<i>Nōl-ŭērīmūs.</i>
<i>Nōl-ŭērīs.</i>	<i>Nōl-ŭērītis.</i>
<i>Nōl-ŭērīt.</i>	<i>Nōl-ŭērīnt.</i>

4.—*Pluperfect Tense*,  
'I might or could have been unwilling.'

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Nōl-ŭīssēm.</i>	<i>Nōl-ŭīssēmūs.</i>
<i>Nōl-ŭīssēs.</i>	<i>Nōl-ŭīssētis.</i>
<i>Nōl-ŭīssēt.</i>	<i>Nōl-ŭīssēnt.</i>

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Present and Imperfect Tense.*

*Nōl-lě*, to be unwilling.

*Perfect and Pluperfect Tense.*

*Nōl-ŭīssě*, to have been unwilling.

*Note.*—*Nō-lō* wants the future tense of the infinitive mood, as it has no supine.

## PARTICIPLE.

PRESENT.—*Nōl-ēns*, being unwilling.

4. *Mā-lō*, 'I prefer, or am more willing.'

*Mā-lō* is compounded of *māgě* (*māgis*) and *volō*; contracted, *mā-lō*, *māl-lēm*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1.—*Present Tense*,  
'I am more willing.'

*Sing.*                      *Plur.*

*Māl-ō.*                      *Māl-ūmūs.*  
*Mā-ris.*                      *Mā-vūltis.*  
*Mā-vūlt.*                      *Māl-ūnt.*

2.—*Imperfect Tense*,  
'I was more willing.'

*Sing.*                      *Plur.*

*Māl-ēbām.*                      *Māl-ēbāmūs.*  
*Māl-ēbās.*                      *Māl-ēbātis.*  
*Māl-ēbāt.*                      *Māl-ēbānt.*

3.—*Perfect Tense*,  
'I have been more willing.'

*Sing.*                      *Plur.*

*Māl-ūi.*                      *Māl-ūimūs.*  
*Māl-ūistī.*                      *Māl-ūistis.*  
*Māl-ūit.*                      *Māl-ūērūnt,*  
   *vel ērē.*

4.—*Pluperfect Tense*,  
'I had been more willing.'

*Sing.*                      *Plur.*

*Māl-ūērām.*                      *Māl-ūērāmūs.*  
*Māl-ūērās.*                      *Māl-ūērātis.*  
*Māl-ūērāt.*                      *Māl-ūērānt.*

5.—*First Future Tense*,  
'I shall or will be more willing.'

*Sing.*                      *Plur.*

*Māl-ām.*                      *Māl-ēmūs.*  
*Māl-ēs.*                      *Māl-ētis.*  
*Māl-ēt.*                      *Māl-ēnt.*

6.—*Second Future, or Future Perfect Tense*,  
'I shall or will have been more willing.'

*Sing.*                      *Plur.*

*Māl-ūērō.*                      *Māl-ūērīmūs.*  
*Māl-ūērīs.*                      *Māl-ūērītis.*  
*Māl-ūērūt.*                      *Māl-ūērīnt.*

*Mā-lō* has no Imperative Mood.

SUBJUNCTIVE, OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

1.—*Present Tense*,  
'I may or can be more willing.'

*Sing.*                      *Plur.*

*Māl-īm.*                      *Māl-īmūs.*  
*Māl-is.*                      *Māl-itīs.*  
*Māl-it.*                      *Māl-int.*

2.—*Imperfect Tense*,  
'I might or could be more willing.'

*Sing.*                      *Plur.*

*Māl-lēm.*                      *Māl-lēmūs.*  
*Māl-lēs.*                      *Māl-lētīs.*  
*Māl-lēt.*                      *Māl-lēnt.*

3.—*Perfect Tense*,  
'I may have been more  
willing.'

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Māl-ŭērīm.</i>	<i>Māl-ŭērīmūs.</i>
<i>Māl-ŭērīs.</i>	<i>Māl-ŭērītīs.</i>
<i>Māl-ŭērīt.</i>	<i>Māl-ŭērīnt.</i>

4.—*Pluperfect Tense*,  
'I might or would have been  
more willing.'

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Māl-ŭīssēm.</i>	<i>Māl-ŭīssēmūs.</i>
<i>Māl-ŭīssēs.</i>	<i>Māl-ŭīssētīs.</i>
<i>Māl-ŭīssēt.</i>	<i>Māl-ŭīssēnt.</i>

### INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Present and Imperfect Tense.*

*Māl-lě*, to be more willing.

*Perfect and Pluperfect Tense.*

*Māl-ŭīssě*, to have been more willing.

*Note 1.*—*Mā-lō* wants the future tense of the infinitive mood, as it has no supine.

*Note 2.*—*Mā-lō* has no participles.

### 5. *Ēd-ō*, 'I eat.'

The verb *ēd-ō* is declined regularly according to the third conjugation, but has, in some tenses, besides its regular form, another similar to the corresponding tenses of the verb *ēs-sě*, 'to be.'

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

1.—*Present Tense*,  
'I eat, or am eating.'

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Ēd-ō.</i>	<i>Ēd-īmūs.</i>
<i>Ēd-īs</i> , v. <i>ēs.</i>	<i>Ēd-ītīs</i> , v. <i>ēstīs.</i>
<i>Ēd-īt</i> , v. <i>ēst.</i>	<i>Ēd-ūnt.</i>

2.—*Imperfect Tense*,  
'I was eating, or did eat.'

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Ēd-ēbām.</i>	<i>Ēd-ēbāmūs.</i>
<i>Ēd-ēbās.</i>	<i>Ēd-ēbātīs.</i>
<i>Ēd-ēbāt.</i>	<i>Ēd-ēbānt.</i>

3.—*Perfect Tense*,  
'I ate or have eaten.'

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Ēd-ī.</i>	<i>Ēd-īmūs.</i>
<i>Ēd-īstī.</i>	<i>Ēd-īstīs.</i>
<i>Ēd-īt.</i>	<i>Ēd-ērūnt, v.</i> <i>ērē.</i>

4.—*Pluperfect Tense*,  
'I had eaten.'

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Ēd-ērām.</i>	<i>Ēd-ērāmūs.</i>
<i>Ēd-ērās.</i>	<i>Ēd-ērātīs.</i>
<i>Ēd-ērāt.</i>	<i>Ēd-ērānt.</i>

5.—*First Future Tense*,  
'I shall or will eat.'

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Ēd-ām.</i>	<i>Ēd-ēmūs.</i>
<i>Ēd-ēs.</i>	<i>Ēd-ētīs.</i>
<i>Ēd-ēt.</i>	<i>Ēd-ēnt.</i>

6.—*Second Future, or*  
*Future Perfect Tense*,  
'I shall or will have eaten.'

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Ēd-ērō.</i>	<i>Ēd-ērīmūs.</i>
<i>Ēd-ērīs.</i>	<i>Ēd-ērītīs.</i>
<i>Ēd-ērīt.</i>	<i>Ēd-ērīnt.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Singular.*

2. *Ēd-ě, ěd-ītō, v. ěs, ěs-tō, eat thou.*
3. *Ēd-ītō, let him eat.*

*Plural.*

2. *Ēd-ūtě, ěd-ītōtě, v. ěs-tě, ěs-tōtě, eat ye or you.*
3. *Ēd-ūtō, let them eat.*

SUBJUNCTIVE, OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

1.—*Present Tense*,  
'I may or can eat.'

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Ēd-ām.</i>	<i>Ēd-āmūs.</i>
<i>Ēd-ās.</i>	<i>Ēd-ātīs.</i>
<i>Ēd-āt.</i>	<i>Ēd-ānt.</i>

2.—*Imperfect Tense*,  
'I might or could eat.'

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Ēd-ērēm, v.</i> <i>essem.</i>	<i>Ēd-ērēmūs, v.</i> <i>essemus.</i>
<i>Ēd-ērēs, v.</i> <i>esses.</i>	<i>Ēd-ērētīs, v.</i> <i>essetis.</i>
<i>Ēd-ērēt, v.</i> <i>esset.</i>	<i>Ēd-ērēnt, v.</i> <i>essent.</i>



3. — *Perfect Tense*,  
'I may have eaten.'

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Ēd-ērīm.</i>	<i>Ēd-ērīmūs.</i>
<i>Ēd-ērīs.</i>	<i>Ēd-ērītīs.</i>
<i>Ēd-ērīt.</i>	<i>Ēd-ērīnt.</i>

4. — *Pluperfect Tense*,  
'I might or could have eaten.'

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Ēd-issēm.</i>	<i>Ēd-issēmūs.</i>
<i>Ēd-issēs.</i>	<i>Ēd-issētīs.</i>
<i>Ēd-issēt.</i>	<i>Ēd-issēnt.</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Present Tense*.—*Ēd-ērē*, v. *ēs-sē*, to eat.

*Perfect Tense*.—*Ēd-issē*, to have eaten.

*Future Tense*.—*Ē-sūrūm ēssē*, to be about to eat.

GERUNDS.

*Ēd-ēndī*, of eating.

*Ēd-ēndō*, in or by eating.

*Ēd-ēndūm*, to eat.

SUPINES.

ACTIVE.—*Ē-sūm*, to eat.

PASSIVE.—*Ē-sū*, to be eaten.

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.—*Ēd-ēns*, eating.

FUTURE.—*Ē-sūrūs*, about to eat.

In the passive voice only *estur*, third person singular present, for *editur*, which is also found.

6. *Fēr-ō*, 'I bear, or suffer.'

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. — *Present Tense*.  
'I bear, or suffer.'

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Fēr-ō.</i>	<i>Fēr-īmūs.</i>
<i>Fērs.</i>	<i>Fēr-tīs.</i>
<i>Fērt.</i>	<i>Fēr-ūnt.</i>

2. — *Imperfect Tense*,  
'I was bearing, or did bear.'

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Fēr-ēbām.</i>	<i>Fēr-ēbāmūs.</i>
<i>Fēr-ēbās.</i>	<i>Fēr-ēbātīs.</i>
<i>Fēr-ēbāt.</i>	<i>Fēr-ēbānt.</i>

3.—*Perfect Tense*,  
'I bore, or have borne.'

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Tŭl-ĭ.</i>	<i>Tŭl-ĭmŭs.</i>
<i>Tŭl-ĭstĭ.</i>	<i>Tŭl-ĭstĭs.</i>
<i>Tŭl-ĭt.</i>	<i>Tŭl-ĕrŭnt, v.</i> <i>ĕrĕ.</i>

4.—*Pluperfect Tense*,  
'I had borne.'

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Tŭl-ĕrām.</i>	<i>Tŭl-ĕrāmŭs.</i>
<i>Tŭl-ĕrās.</i>	<i>Tŭl-ĕrātĭs.</i>
<i>Tŭl-ĕrāt.</i>	<i>Tŭl-ĕrānt.</i>

5.—*First Future Tense*,  
'I shall or will bear.'

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Fĕr-ām.</i>	<i>Fĕr-ēmŭs.</i>
<i>Fĕr-ēs.</i>	<i>Fĕr-ētĭs.</i>
<i>Fĕr-ēt.</i>	<i>Fĕr-ēnt.</i>

6.—*Second Future, or*  
*Future Perfect Tense*,  
'I shall or will have borne.'

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Tŭl-ĕrō.</i>	<i>Tŭl-ĕrīmŭs.</i>
<i>Tŭl-ĕrĭs.</i>	<i>Tŭl-ĕrītĭs.</i>
<i>Tŭl-ĕrīt.</i>	<i>Tŭl-ĕrĭnt.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Singular.*

2. *Fĕr, fĕr-tō*, bear thou.
3. *Fĕr-tō*, let him bear.

*Plural.*

2. *Fĕr-tĕ, fĕr-tōtĕ*, bear ye or you.
3. *Fĕr-ŭntō*, let them bear.

SUBJUNCTIVE, OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

1.—*Present Tense*,  
'I may or can bear.'

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Fĕr-ām.</i>	<i>Fĕr-āmŭs.</i>
<i>Fĕr-ās.</i>	<i>Fĕr-ātĭs.</i>
<i>Fĕr-āt.</i>	<i>Fĕr-ānt.</i>

2.—*Imperfect Tense*,  
'I might or could bear.'

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Fĕr-rēm.</i>	<i>Fĕr-rēmŭs.</i>
<i>Fĕr-rēs.</i>	<i>Fĕr-rētĭs.</i>
<i>Fĕr-rēt.</i>	<i>Fĕr-rĕnt.</i>

3.—*Perfect Tense*,  
'I may have borne.'

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Tŭl-ērĭm.</i>	<i>Tŭl-ērĭmŭs.</i>
<i>Tŭl-ērĭs.</i>	<i>Tŭl-ērĭtis.</i>
<i>Tŭl-ērĭt.</i>	<i>Tŭl-ērĭnt.</i>

4.—*Pluperfect Tense*,  
'I might or could have borne.'

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Tŭl-issēm.</i>	<i>Tŭl-issēmŭs.</i>
<i>Tŭl-issēs.</i>	<i>Tŭl-issētis.</i>
<i>Tŭl-issēt.</i>	<i>Tŭl-issēnt.</i>

### INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Present and Imperfect Tense.*

*Fēr-rē*, to bear.

*Perfect and Pluperfect Tense.*

*Tŭl-issē*, to have borne.

*Future Tense.*—*Lā-tŭrŭm ēssē*, to be about to bear.

### GERUNDS.

*Fēr-ēndī*, of bearing.

*Fēr-ēndō*, in or by bearing.

*Fēr-ēndŭm*, to bear.

### SUPINES.

ACTIVE.—*Lā-tŭm*, to bear.

PASSIVE.—*Lā-tŭ*, to be borne.

### PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.—*Fēr-ēns*, bearing.

FUTURE.—*Lā-tŭrŭs*, about to bear.

7. *Fēr-ōr*, 'I am borne, or suffered.'

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

1.—*Present Tense*,  
'I am borne or suffered.'

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Fēr-ōr.</i>	<i>Fēr-īmŭr.</i>
<i>Fēr-rĭs, v.</i>	<i>Fēr-īmĭnĭ.</i>
<i>fēr-rē.</i>	
<i>Fēr-tŭr.</i>	<i>Fēr-ŭntŭr.</i>

2.—*Imperfect Tense*,  
'I was borne.'

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Fēr-ēbār.</i>	<i>Fēr-ēbāmŭr.</i>
<i>Fēr-ēbārĭs,</i>	<i>Fēr-ēbāmĭnĭ.</i>
<i>v. ā-rē.</i>	
<i>Fēr-ēbātŭr.</i>	<i>Fēr-ēbāntŭr.</i>

3.—*Perfect Tense*,  
'I have been borne.'

*Sing.*

*Lā-tūs sum*, v. *fui*.

*Lā-tūs es*, v. *fuisti*.

*Lā-tūs est*, v. *fuit*.

*Plur.*

*Lā-tī sumus*, v. *fuimus*.

*Lā-tī estis*, v. *fuistis*.

*Lā-tī sunt*, v. *fuērunt*, v. *ērē*.

4.—*Pluperfect Tense*,  
'I had been borne.'

*Sing.*

*Lātūs eram*, v. *fueram*.

*Lā-tūs eras*, v. *fueras*.

*Lā-tūs erat*, v. *fuerat*.

*Plur.*

*Lā-tī eramus*, v. *fueraimus*.

*Lā-tī eratis*, v. *fueraatis*.

*Lā-tī erant*, v. *fueraant*.

5.—*First Future Tense*,  
'I shall or will be borne.'

*Sing.*

*Fēr-ār*.

*Fēr-ērīs*, v. *ērē*.

*Fēr-ētūr*.

*Plur.*

*Fēr-ēmūr*.

*Fēr-ēmīnī*.

*Fēr-ētūr*.

6.—*Second Future, or  
Future Perfect Tense*,  
'I shall or will have been  
borne.'

*Sing.*

*Lā-tūs ero*, v. *fuero*.

*Lā-tūs eris*, v. *fuerois*.

*Lā-tūs erit*, v. *fueroit*.

*Plur.*

*Lā-tī erimus*, v. *fueroimus*.

*Lā-tī eritis*, v. *fueroitis*.

*Lā-tī erunt*, v. *fueroint*.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Singular.*

2. *Fēr-rě*, *fēr-tōr*, be thou borne.

3. *Fēr-tōr*, let him be borne.

*Plural.*

2. *Fēr-īmīnī*, *fēr-īmīnōr*, be ye or you borne.

3. *Fēr-ūntōr*, let them be borne.

## SUBJUNCTIVE, OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

1.—*Present Tense*,  
'I may or can be borne.'

*Sing.*

*Fēr-ār.*

*Fēr-āris*, v. *ārē.*

*Fēr-ātūr.*

*Plur.*

*Fēr-āmūr.*

*Fēr-āminī.*

*Fēr-āntūr.*

2.—*Imperfect Tense*,  
'I might or could be borne.'

*Sing.*

*Fēr-rēr.*

*Fēr-rērīs*, v. *ērē.*

*Fēr-rētūr.*

*Plur.*

*Fēr-rēmūr.*

*Fēr-rēmīnī.*

*Fēr-rēntūr.*

3.—*Perfect Tense*,  
'I may have been borne.'

*Sing.*

*Lā-tūs sim*, v. *fuerim.*

*Lā-tūs sis*, v. *fueris.*

*Lā-tūs sit*, v. *fuerit.*

*Plur.*

*Lā-tī simus*, v. *fuerimus.*

*Lā-tī sitis*, v. *fueritis.*

*Lā-tī sint*, v. *fuerint.*

4.—*Pluperfect Tense*,  
'I might have been borne.'

*Sing.*

*Lā-tūs essem*, v. *fuissem.*

*Lā-tūs esses*, v. *fuisesses.*

*Lā-tūs esset*, v. *fuisset.*

*Plur.*

*Lā-tī essemus*, v. *fuissemus.*

*Lā-tī essetis*, v. *fuissetis.*

*Lā-tī essent*, v. *fuisissent.*

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Present and Imperfect Tense.*

*Fēr-rī*, to be borne.

*Perfect and Pluperfect Tense.*

*Lā-tūm ēssē*, v. *fūīssē*, to have been borne.

*Future Tense.*

*Lā-tūm irī*, to be about to be borne.

PARTICIPLES.

PAST.—*Lā-tūs*, borne, or having been borne.

FUTURE.—*Fēr-ēndūs*, that must be borne.

*Note.*—Periphrastic Conjugation, *fēr-ēndūs* (*a, um*), *sum, eram, fui, ero, &c.*

8. *Fī-ō*, 'I become, or am made.'

*Fī-ō* supplies the place of the passive of *facio*, from which it takes *factus* and all the past tenses and the participles in *dus*; as, *faciendus*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1.—*Present Tense*,  
'I become, or am made.'

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Fī-ō.</i>	<i>Fī-mūs.</i>
<i>Fīs.</i>	<i>Fī-tīs.</i>
<i>Fīt.</i>	<i>Fī-ūt.</i>

2.—*Imperfect Tense*,  
'I did become, or was made.'

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Fī-ēbām.</i>	<i>Fī-ēbāmūs.</i>
<i>Fī-ēbās.</i>	<i>Fī-ēbātīs.</i>
<i>Fī-ēbāt.</i>	<i>Fī-ēbānt.</i>

3.—*Perfect Tense*,  
'I became, or have been made.'

<i>Sing.</i>
<i>Fāc-tūs sum, v. fui.</i>
<i>Fāc-tūs es, v. fuisti.</i>
<i>Fāc-tūs est, v. fuit.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Fāc-tī sumus, v. fuimus.</i>
<i>Fāc-tī estis, v. fuistis.</i>
<i>Fāc-tī sunt, fuērunt, v. ēre.</i>

4.—*Pluperfect Tense*,  
'I had become, or had been made.'

<i>Sing.</i>
<i>Fāc-tūs eram, v. fueram.</i>
<i>Fāc-tūs eras, v. fueras.</i>
<i>Fāc-tūs erat, v. fuerat.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Fāc-tī eramus, v. fueramus.</i>
<i>Fāc-tī eratis, v. fueratis.</i>
<i>Fāc-tī erant, v. fuerant.</i>

5.—*First Future Tense*,  
'I shall or will become.'

*Sing.*

*Fī-ām.*

*Fī-ēs.*

*Fī-ēt.*

*Plur.*

*Fī-ēmūs.*

*Fī-ētīs.*

*Fī-ēnt.*

6.—*Second Future, or  
Future Perfect Tense*,  
'I shall or will have become,  
or been made.'

*Sing.*

*Fāc-tūs ero, v. fuero.*

*Fāc-tūs eris, v. fueris.*

*Fāc-tūs erit, v. fuerit.*

*Plur.*

*Fāc-tī erimus, v. fuerimus.*

*Fāc-tī eritis, v. fueritis.*

*Fāc-tī erunt, v. fuerint.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Singular.*

*Fī, fī-tō,* become thou.

*Fī-tō,* let him become.

*Plural.*

*Fī-tō, fī-tōtō,* become ye or you.

*Fī-ūtō,* let them become.

*Note.* — The imperative *fī, fī-mūs* and *fī-tīs*, are rarely used.

SUBJUNCTIVE, OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

1.—*Present Tense*,  
'I may or can become.'

*Sing.*

*Fī-ām.*

*Fī-ās.*

*Fī-āt.*

*Plur.*

*Fī-āmūs.*

*Fī-ātīs.*

*Fī-ānt.*

2.—*Imperfect Tense*,  
'I might or could become.'

*Sing.*

*Fī-ērēm.*

*Fī-ērēs.*

*Fī-ērēt.*

*Plur.*

*Fī-ērēmūs.*

*Fī-ērētīs.*

*Fī-ērēnt.*

3.—*Perfect Tense*,  
'I may have become, or  
have been made.'

*Sing.*

*Fāc-tūs sim, v. fuerim.*

*Fāc-tūs sis, v. fueris.*

*Fāc-tūs sit, v. fuerit.*

*Plur.*

*Fāc-tī simus, v. fuerimus.*

*Fāc-tī sitis, v. fueritis.*

*Fāc-tī sint, v. fuerint.*

4.—*Pluperfect Tense*,  
'I might or could have  
become, or been made.'

*Sing.*

*Fāc-tūs essem, v. fuisset.*

*Fāc-tūs esses, v. fuisses.*

*Fāc-tūs esset, v. fuisset.*

*Plur.*

*Fāc-tī essemus, v. fuisset.*

*Fāc-tī essetis, v. fuissetis.*

*Fāc-tī essent, v. fuissent.*

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Present and Imperfect Tense.*

*Fī-ērī*, to be made, or to become.

*Perfect and Pluperfect Tense.*

*Fāc-tūm ēssē*, v. *fūissē*, to have been made, or to have become.

*Future Tense.*

*Fāc-tūm irī*, to be about to be made, or become.

## PARTICIPLES.

PAST.—*Fāc-tūs*, made, or become.

FUTURE.—*Fā-ciēndūs*, that must be made, or become.

*Note.*—Periphrastic Conjugation, *fā-ciēndūs* (*a, um*),  
*sum, eram, fui, ero*, &c.



9. *Ē-ō*, 'I go.'

*Ē-ō* is irregular only in the present, and the tenses derived from it.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

1.—*Present Tense*,  
'I go.'

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Ē-ō.</i>	<i>Ī-mūs.</i>
<i>Īs.</i>	<i>Ī-tīs.</i>
<i>Īt.</i>	<i>Ē-ūnt.</i>

2.—*Imperfect Tense*,  
'I was going.'

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Ī-bām.</i>	<i>Ī-bāmūs.</i>
<i>Ī-bās.</i>	<i>Ī-bātīs.</i>
<i>Ī-bāt.</i>	<i>Ī-bānt.</i>

3.—*Perfect Tense*,  
'I went, or have gone.'

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Ī-vī.</i>	<i>Ī-vīmūs.</i>
<i>Ī-vistī.</i>	<i>Ī-vistīs.</i>
<i>Ī-vīt.</i>	<i>Ī-vērūnt, v. ērē.</i>

4.—*Pluperfect Tense*,  
'I had gone.'

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Ī-vērām.</i>	<i>Ī-vērāmus.</i>
<i>Ī-vērās.</i>	<i>Ī-vērātīs.</i>
<i>Ī-vērāt.</i>	<i>Ī-vērānt.</i>

5.—*First Future Tense*,  
'I shall or will go.'

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Ī-bō.</i>	<i>Ī-bīmus.</i>
<i>Ī-bīs.</i>	<i>Ī-bītīs.</i>
<i>Ī-bīt.</i>	<i>Ī-būnt.</i>

6.—*Second Future, or  
Future Perfect Tense*,  
'I shall or will have gone.'

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Ī-vērō.</i>	<i>Ī-vērīmūs.</i>
<i>Ī-vērīs.</i>	<i>Ī-vērītīs.</i>
<i>Ī-vērīt.</i>	<i>Ī-vērīnt.</i>

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Sing.</i>
<i>Ī, ī-tō, go thou.</i>
<i>Ī-tō, let him go.</i>

<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Ī-tō, ī-tōtō, go ye or you.</i>
<i>Ē-ūntō, let them go.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE, OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

1.— <i>Present Tense</i> , 'I may or can go.'		3.— <i>Perfect Tense</i> , 'I may have gone.'	
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Ē-ām.</i>	<i>Ē-āmūs.</i>	<i>Ī-čērīm.</i>	<i>Ī-čērīmūs.</i>
<i>Ē-ās.</i>	<i>Ē-ātīs.</i>	<i>Ī-čērīs.</i>	<i>Ī-čērītīs.</i>
<i>Ē-āt.</i>	<i>Ē-ānt.</i>	<i>Ī-čērīt.</i>	<i>Ī-čērīnt.</i>
2.— <i>Imperfect Tense</i> , 'I might or could go.'		4.— <i>Pluperfect Tense</i> , 'I might or could have gone.'	
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Ī-rēm.</i>	<i>Ī-rēmūs.</i>	<i>Ī-čīssēm.</i>	<i>Ī-čīssēmūs.</i>
<i>Ī-rēs.</i>	<i>Ī-rētīs.</i>	<i>Ī-čīssēs.</i>	<i>Ī-čīssētīs.</i>
<i>Ī-rēt.</i>	<i>Ī-rēnt.</i>	<i>Ī-čīssēt.</i>	<i>Ī-čīssēnt.</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Present and Imperfect Tense.*

*Ī-rē*, to go.

*Perfect and Pluperfect Tense.*

*Ī-čīssē*, to have gone.

*Future Tense.*

*Ī-tūrūm ēssē*, to be about 'to go.

GERUNDS.

*Ē-ūndī*, of going. . . *Ē-ūndō*, in or by going.

*Ē-ūndūm*, to go.

SUPINES.

*Ī-tūm*, to go. . . *Ī-tū*, to be gone.

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.—*Ī-ēns* (genitive *ē-ūntīs*), going.

FUTURE.—*Ī-tūrūs*, about to go.

In the passive voice it exists only as an impersonal ; as, *itur*, *ibatur*, &c.

## DEFECTIVE VERBS.

Verbs that have only some particular tenses and persons are called Defective.

1. *Aī-ō*, 'I say.'

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

1.— <i>Present Tense.</i>		3.— <i>Perfect Tense.</i>	
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Aī-ō.</i>	—	—	—
<i>Ā-īs.</i>	—	<i>Āī-stī.</i>	<i>Āī-stīs.</i>
<i>Ā-īt.</i>	<i>Aī-ūnt.</i>	—	—
2.— <i>Imperfect Tense.</i>		IMPERATIVE MOOD.	
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Aī-ēbām.</i>	<i>Aī-ēbāmūs.</i>	—	—
<i>Aī-ēbās.</i>	<i>Aī-ēbātīs.</i>	<i>Ā-ī vel aī.</i>	—
<i>Aī-ēbāt.</i>	<i>Aī-ēbānt.</i>	—	—

## SUBJUNCTIVE, OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

*Present Tense.*

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
—, <i>aī-ās, aī-āt.</i>	<i>Aīā-mūs, — aī-ānt.</i>

## PARTICIPLE.

PRESENT.—*Aī-ēns*, saying.

2. *Aū-sīm*, 'I dare.'

## INDICATIVE AND POTENTIAL OR SUBJUNCTIVE MOODS.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Aū-sīm, aū-sīs, aū-sīt.</i>	— — <i>aū-sīnt.</i>

3. *Īn-quīō* v. *īn-quām*, 'I say.'

This verb is only used *between* the words which are quoted, and never stands at the beginning of a sentence.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1.—Present Tense.		3.—Perfect Tense.	
Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
<i>Īn-quīō</i> , v. <i>īn-quām</i> .	<i>Īn-quīmūs</i> .	—	—
<i>Īn-quīs</i> .	<i>Īn-quītīs</i> .	<i>Īn-quīstī</i> .	<i>Īn-quīstīs</i> .
<i>Īn-quīt</i> .	<i>Īn-quīūnt</i> .	<i>Īn-quīt</i> .	—
2.—Imperfect Tense.		5.—First Future Tense.	
Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
<i>Īn-quīēbām</i> .	<i>Īn-quīēbāmūs</i> .	—	—
<i>Īn-quīēbās</i> .	<i>Īn-quīēbātīs</i> .	<i>Īn-quīēs</i> .	—
<i>Īn-quīēbāt</i> .	<i>Īn-quīēbānt</i> .	<i>Īn-quīēt</i> .	—

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	Plur.
— <i>īn-quē</i> , <i>īn-quītō</i> —	— <i>Īn-quītē</i> —

4. *Fā-rī*, 'Speak, say.'

This verb, with its compounds, is in use only among poets: the third person present, *fatur*; the imperative, *fare*; and the participle, *fatus*, *a*, *um*, occur most frequently.

5. *Cæpī*, 'I begin.' 6. *Mēmīnī*, 'I remember.' 7. *Nōvī*, 'I know.' 8. *Ōdī*, 'I hate.'

These four verbs are perfects, with the meaning of the present. They have only the tenses which are formed

from the perfect ; the pluperfect corresponding to the imperfect, the second future, or future perfect, to the future.

*Cœpī, cœpērām, cœpērō, cœpērīm, cœpīssēm, cœpīssē.*

*Mēmīnī, mēmīnērām, mēmīnērō, mēmīnērīm, mēmīnīssēm, mēmīnīssē.*

*Nōcī, nōcērām (nōrām), nōcērō, nōcērīm (nōrīm), nōcīssēm (nōssēm), nōcīssē (nōssē).*

*Ōdī, ōdērām, ōdērō, ōdērīm, ōdīssēm, ōdīssē.*

*Mēmīnī* alone has an imperative,—*memento*, ‘remember thou ;’ *mementote*, ‘remember ye.’

*Cœpī* has a perfect passive,—*cœptūs* (*a, um*) *sum*, of the same meaning as the active, but used with passive infinitives. *Ōdī* has *ōsūrūs* ; and *ēxōsūs* and *pērōsūs* are also found.

9. *Āpāgē*, ‘Begone.’ 10. *Āvē*, ‘Hail.’ 11. *Sālvē*, *sālvētō*, ‘Hail.’ 12. *Vālē*, *vālētō*, ‘Farewell.’

*Āpāgē* is the imperfect of the Greek ἀπάγω (*apago*) ; *vālē* and *āvē*, of *valeo* and *aveo*, ‘to be well.’ *Sālvē* is the imperative of the obsolete *salveo*, ‘to be in sound health.’ Their plurals are,—

*Āpāgētē, āvētē, sālvētē, vālētē.*

Infinitive,—*Sālvērē, vālērē.*

13. *Cēdō*, ‘Give, tell.’

This word is used as an imperative both singular and plural ; it has also a plural, *cēdītē*, in the comic writers contracted into *cēttē*.

14. *Quæso*, 'I beseech.'

*Quæso*, first person plural *quæsumus*, originally the same with *quæro*, is used in the first person in the sense of 'I beseech.'

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

Those verbs are strictly called Impersonals, of which only the third person singular is found, and which do not admit a personal subject (I, thou, he), but a proposition, or a neuter noun understood.

They are formed in the third person singular, according to the conjugation to which they belong ; as,

*Pigët, piguit, or pigitum est.*

*Tædët (tæduit, very rare), pertæsum est.*

*Ôpörtët, oportuit, &c.*

There are other impersonals which take no *personal* nominative, but yet are used with a neuter pronoun as a nominative.

*Lïcët (libet), libuit, or libitum est.*

*Lïquët, liquit, or licuit, &c. &c.*

Many verbs are used impersonally in the third person, and personally in the others. To these belong *intërëst* and *rëfërt*, *accidit*, *füt*, &c.

Words which denote changes of the weather are used impersonally ; as, *plüit*, *nïngit*, &c.

The third person singular of many verbs, especially those which express movement, is used impersonally ; as, *cür-ritür*, *ëccëssum est*, *vëntum est*, &c.

## IRREGULAR VERBS.

*List of Verbs which are Irregular in the Formation of their Perfect and Supine.*

### FIRST CONJUGATION.

The irregularity of the verbs of the first conjugation consists in this, that they make the perfect to end in *ui*, and the supine in *itum*, like the second conjugation ; the *i* (in *itum*) is sometimes left out. The following is a list of them, and their principal parts :—

Present.	Perfect.	Supine.	
<i>Creπο</i>	- <i>ui</i>	- <i>itum</i> ,	to make a noise.
<i>Cubo</i>	- <i>ui</i>	- <i>itum</i> ,	to lie.
<i>Domo</i>	- <i>ui</i>	- <i>itum</i> ,	to subdue.
<i>Frico</i>	- <i>ui</i>	- <i>atum, tum</i> ,	to rub.
<i>Jūvo</i>	- <i>i</i>	- <i>ūtum</i> ,*	to help.
<i>Lāvo</i>	- <i>i</i>	{ - <i>atum, -au-</i> <i>tum, -otum</i> , }	to wash.
<i>Mico</i>	- <i>ui</i>	(no supine),	to glitter.
<i>Neco†</i>	- <i>avi</i>	- <i>atum</i> ,	to kill.
<i>Plico</i>	(no perfect)	(no supine),	to fold.
<i>Poto</i>	(no perfect)	- <i>atum, -um</i> ,	to drink.
<i>Seco</i>	- <i>ui</i>	- <i>tum</i> ,	to cut.
<i>Sono</i>	- <i>ui</i>	- <i>itum</i> ,	to resound.
<i>Tono</i>	- <i>ui</i>	- <i>itum</i> ,	to thunder.
<i>Veto</i>	- <i>ui</i>	- <i>itum</i> ,	to forbid.
<i>Do</i> makes	<i>dēdi</i>	<i>dātum</i> ,	to give.
<i>Sto</i> makes	<i>stēti</i>	<i>stātum</i> ,	to stand.

### SECOND CONJUGATION.

Verbs of the second conjugation, which have in the present a *v* before *eo*, are contracted ; as, *careo*, *cavi*, *cautum*, for *cavui*, *cavitum*.

\* Doubtful.

† *Neco* makes *ui* and *tum*, but very rare.

Neuter verbs of the second conjugation generally want the supine and the tenses derived from it. Some of them, however, have the future in *rus*, &c., though not the supine; as, *caliturus*. *Aveo*, *denseo*, *flaveo*, *polleo*, *scateo*, and a few others, have neither perfect nor supine.

*Arceo* and *timeo* have no supine.

### 1. Verbs ending in *veo*.

Present.	Perfect.	Supine.	
<i>Caveo</i>	- <i>avi</i>	- <i>autum</i> ,	to take care.
<i>Conniveo</i>	- <i>ivi</i> or - <i>ixi</i>	(no supine),	to close the eyes.
<i>Făveo</i>	- <i>ăvi</i>	- <i>autum</i> ,	to be favourable.
<i>Ferreo</i>	{ - <i>erri</i> and - <i>erbui</i> }	(no supine),	to glow.
<i>Fŏreo</i>	- <i>ŏvi</i>	- <i>otum</i> ,	to cherish.
<i>Mŏveo</i>	- <i>ŏvi</i>	- <i>otum</i> ,	to move.
<i>Păveo</i>	- <i>ăvi</i>	(no supine),	to dread.
<i>Vŏveo</i>	- <i>ŏvi</i>	- <i>otum</i> ,	to vow.

*Note*.—*Cieo*, *ciĕre*, and the obsolete *cio*, *cire*, both mean ‘to excite,’ and have one perfect, *civi*, but a different accent in the supine; as, *cieo*, *cĭtum*; *cio*, *cĭtum*.

### 2. Verbs ending in *ceo*, *geo*, *queo*.

Present.	Perfect.	Supine.	
<i>Algeo</i>	- <i>si</i>	(no supine),	{ to shiver with cold.
<i>Augeo</i>	- <i>xi</i>	- <i>ctum</i> ,	to increase.
<i>Dŏceo</i>	- <i>ui</i>	- <i>ctum</i> ,	to teach.
<i>Frigeo</i>	{ - <i>xi</i> , from <i>refrigesco</i> }	(no supine),	to be cold.
<i>Fulgeo</i>	- <i>si</i>	(no supine),	to be bright.
<i>Indulgeo</i>	- <i>si</i>	- <i>ultum</i> ,	to indulge.



Present.	Perfect.	Supine.	
<i>Liquet</i> (im- personal) }	<i>-cuit</i>	(no supine),	to clear ( <i>fig.</i> ).
<i>Luceo</i>	<i>-xi</i>	(no supine),	to shine.
<i>Lugeo</i>	<i>-xi</i>	(no supine),	to mourn.
<i>Misceo</i>	<i>-cui</i>	{ <i>-xtum</i> and <i>-stum</i> ,	to mix.
<i>Mulceo</i>	<i>-si</i>	<i>-sum</i> ,	to stroke.
<i>Mulgeo</i>	<i>-si</i>	(no supine),	to milk.
<i>Tergeo</i>	<i>-si</i>	<i>-sum</i> ,	to wipe.
<i>Torqueo</i>	<i>torsi</i>	<i>tortum</i> ,	to twist.
<i>Turgeo</i>	<i>-si</i>	(no supine),	to swell.

3. Verbs ending in *deo*.

Present.	Perfect.	Supine.	
<i>Ardeo</i>	<i>arsi</i>	<i>arsum</i> ,	to burn.
<i>Audeo</i>	<i>-sus sum</i>	(no supine),	to dare.
<i>Gaudeo</i>	<i>garisus sum</i>	(no supine),	to rejoice.
<i>Mordeo</i>	<i>momordi</i>	<i>-sum</i> ,	to bite.
<i>Prandeo</i>	<i>-di</i>	<i>-sum</i> ,	to dine.
<i>Rideo</i>	<i>-si</i>	<i>-sum</i> ,	to laugh,
<i>Sēdeo</i>	<i>-di</i>	<i>-ssum</i> ,	to sit.
<i>Spondeo</i>	<i>spospondi</i>	<i>-sum</i> ,	to promise.
<i>Suādeo</i>	<i>-si</i>	<i>-sum</i> ,	to exhort.
<i>Tondeo</i>	<i>totondi</i>	<i>-sum</i> ,	to shear.
<i>Video</i>	<i>-di</i>	<i>-sum</i> ,	to see.

## 4. Different terminations of the Second Conjugation.

Present.	Perfect.	Supine.	
<i>Censeo</i>	<i>-sui</i>	<i>-sum</i> ,	to think.
<i>Compleo</i>	<i>-plēci</i>	<i>-pletum</i> ,	to fill up.
<i>Deleo</i>	<i>-ēvi</i>	<i>-etum</i> ,	to destroy.
<i>Fleo</i>	<i>-ēci</i>	<i>-etum</i> ,	to weep.
<i>Hæreo</i>	<i>-si</i>	<i>-sum</i> ,	to cleave.
<i>Jubeo</i>	<i>-ssi</i>	<i>-ssum</i> ,	to command.

Present.	Perfect.	Supine.	
<i>Maneo</i>	-si	-sum,	to remain.
<i>Mæreo</i>	(without perfect or supine),		to grieve.
<i>Neo</i>	-evi	-etum,	to spin.
<i>Oleo</i> {	(regularly conjugated, but without a supine)		} to smell.
<i>Soleo,</i>	<i>solitus sum</i>		
<i>Sorbeo</i>	{ -ui (-psi) very rare }	-ptum,	to drink up.
<i>Teneo</i>	-ui	-tum (rare)	to hold.
<i>Torreo</i>	-rui	tostum,	to parch.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

Present.	Perfect.	Supine.	
<i>Abdo</i>	-didi	-ditum,	to hide.
<i>Accumbo</i>	-bui	-itum,	to lie down.
<i>Ago</i>	egi	actum,	to act.
<i>Arcesso</i>	-ivi	-itum,	to send for
<i>Bibo,</i>	bibi	-itum,	to drink.
<i>Cado,</i>	cecidi	casum,	to fall.
<i>Cædo</i>	cecidi	cæsum,	to beat.
<i>Cano</i>	cecini	cantum,	to sing.
<i>Capesso</i>	-ivi	-itum,	to begin.
<i>Capio</i>	cepi	captum,	to take.
<i>Cedo</i>	-ssi	-ssum,	to yield.
<i>Cerno</i>	crevi	cretum,	to see.
<i>Claudo</i>	-si	-sum,	to shut.
<i>Colo</i>	-ui	cultum,	to cultivate.
<i>Como</i>	-psi	-ptum,	to comb, or adorn
<i>Compesco</i>	-ui	(no supine),	to restrain.
<i>Consulo</i>	-ui	-tum,	to consult.
<i>Cresco</i>	crevi	cretum,	to increase.
<i>Cudo</i>	-di	-sum,	to hammer.
<i>Cupio</i>	-ivi	-itum,	to desire.
<i>Curro</i>	cucurri	cursum,	to run.

Present.	Perfect.	Supine.	
<i>Demo</i>	<i>-psi</i>	<i>-ptum,</i>	to take away.
<i>Divido</i>	<i>-si</i>	<i>-sum,</i>	to divide.
<i>Duco</i>	<i>-xi</i>	<i>-ctum,</i>	to lead.
<i>Edo</i>	<i>-di</i>	<i>-sum,</i>	to eat.
<i>Emo</i>	<i>emi</i>	<i>emptum,</i>	to buy.
<i>Facio</i>	<i>feci</i>	<i>factum,</i>	to make.
<i>Fallo</i>	<i>fefelli</i>	<i>falsum,</i>	to deceive.
<i>Figo</i>	<i>-xi</i>	<i>-xum,</i>	to fix.
<i>Findo</i>	<i>fidi</i>	<i>fissum,</i>	to cleave.
<i>Fingo</i>	<i>-xi</i>	<i>fictum,</i>	to frame.
<i>Flecto</i>	<i>-xi</i>	<i>-xum,</i>	to bend.
<i>Fluo</i>	<i>-xi</i>	<i>-xum,</i>	to flow.
<i>Fodio</i>	<i>-di</i>	<i>-ssum,</i>	to dig.
<i>Frango</i>	<i>fregi</i>	<i>fractum,</i>	to break.
<i>Fremo</i>	<i>-ui</i>	<i>-itum,</i>	to roar.
<i>Fundo</i>	<i>fudi</i>	<i>fusum,</i>	to pour out.
<i>Fugio</i>	<i>-i</i>	<i>-itum,</i>	to flee.
<i>Gemo</i>	<i>-ui</i>	<i>-itum,</i>	to groan.
<i>Gero</i>	<i>-ssi</i>	<i>-stum,</i>	to bear.
<i>Gigno</i>	<i>genui</i>	<i>genitum,</i>	to beget.
<i>Illido</i>	<i>-si</i>	<i>-sum,</i>	to beat against.
<i>Jacio</i>	<i>jeci</i>	<i>jactum,</i>	to cast.
<i>Jungo</i>	<i>-xi</i>	<i>-ctum,</i>	to join.
<i>Lacesso</i>	<i>-ici</i>	<i>-itum,</i>	to disturb.
<i>Lædo</i>	<i>-si</i>	<i>-sum,</i>	to hurt.
<i>Lego</i>	<i>-gi</i>	<i>-ctum,</i>	to read.
<i>Linquo</i>	<i>liqui</i>	(no supine),	to leave.
<i>Lino</i>	<i>lini</i>	<i>litum,</i>	to anoint.
<i>Mergo</i>	<i>-si</i>	<i>-sum,</i>	to dip.
<i>Meto</i>	<i>-ssui</i>	<i>-ssum,</i>	to mow.
<i>Mitto</i>	<i> misi</i>	<i>-ssum,</i>	to send.
<i>Molo</i>	<i>-ui</i>	<i>-itum,</i>	to grind.
<i>Necto</i>	<i>-xi, -xui</i>	<i>-xum,</i>	to knit.
<i>Nosco</i>	<i>noti</i>	<i>notum,</i>	to know.
<i>Nubo</i>	<i>-psi</i>	<i>-ptum,</i>	to marry.
<i>Pango</i>	<i>pepigi</i>	<i>pactum,</i>	to fasten.

Present.	Perfect.	Supine.	
<i>Parco</i>	<i>peperci</i>	(no supine),	to spare.
<i>Pario</i>	<i>peperi</i>	<i>partum,</i>	to beget.
<i>Pasco</i>	<i>pavi</i>	<i>pastum,</i>	to feed.
<i>Pecto</i>	<i>-xi</i>	<i>-xum,</i>	to dress.
<i>Pello</i>	<i>pepuli</i>	<i>pulsum,</i>	to drive.
<i>Pendo,</i>	<i>pependi</i>	<i>pensum,</i>	to weigh.
<i>Percello</i>	<i>perculi</i>	<i>perculsum,</i>	to strike.
<i>Peto</i>	<i>-ivi</i>	<i>-itum,</i>	to ask.
<i>Pingo</i>	<i>-xi</i>	<i>pictum,</i>	to paint.
<i>Posco,</i>	<i>poposci</i>	(no supine),	to demand.
<i>Pono</i>	<i>-sui</i>	<i>-situm,</i>	to place.
<i>Premo</i>	<i>-ssi</i>	<i>-ssum,</i>	to press.
<i>Promo</i>	<i>-psi</i>	<i>-ptum,</i>	{ to disclose, or bring out.
<i>Quatio</i>	<i>-ssi</i>	<i>-ssum,</i>	
<i>Quæro</i>	<i>-sivi</i>	<i>-situm,</i>	to seek.
<i>Rapio</i>	<i>-ui</i>	<i>-tum,</i>	to seize.
<i>Rumpo</i>	<i>rupi</i>	<i>ruptum,</i>	to break.
<i>Scindo</i>	<i>-di</i>	<i>-ssum,</i>	to cut.
<i>Sero</i>	<i>-ui</i>	<i>-tum,</i>	to lay in order.
<i>Sero</i>	<i>sēvi</i>	<i>satum,</i>	to sow.
<i>Sino</i>	<i>sivi</i>	<i>situm,</i>	to suffer.
<i>Sisto</i>	<i>stiti</i>	<i>statum,</i>	to stand still.
<i>Sterno</i>	<i>stravi</i>	<i>stratum,</i>	to spread.
<i>Stinguo</i>	<i>-xi</i>	<i>-ctum,</i>	to extinguish.
<i>Strepo</i>	<i>-ui</i>	<i>-itum,</i>	to make a noise.
<i>Stringo</i>	<i>-xi</i>	<i>strictum,</i>	to hold fast.
<i>Struo</i>	<i>-xi</i>	<i>-ctum,</i>	to pile.
<i>Solvo</i>	<i>-vi</i>	<i>-utum,</i>	to loosen.
<i>Spargo</i>	<i>-si</i>	<i>-sum,</i>	to scatter.
<i>Sperno</i>	<i>sprevi</i>	<i>spretum,</i>	to despise.
<i>Suesco</i>	<i>sueti</i>	<i>suetum,</i>	to rest.
<i>Sugo</i>	<i>-xi</i>	<i>-ctum,</i>	to suck.
<i>Sumo</i>	<i>-psi</i>	<i>-ptum,</i>	to receive.
<i>Tango</i>	<i>tetigi</i>	<i>tactum,</i>	to touch.
<i>Tendo</i>	<i>tetendi</i>	<i>tensum,</i>	to stretch.

Present.	Perfect.	Supine.	
<i>Tergo</i>	<i>-si</i>	<i>-sum,</i>	to wipe.
<i>Tero</i>	<i>trivi</i>	<i>tritum,</i>	to rub.
<i>Texo</i>	<i>-ui</i>	<i>-tum,</i>	to weave.
<i>Tollo</i>	<i>sustuli</i>	<i>sublatum,</i>	to take up.
<i>Tremo</i>	<i>-ui</i>	<i>-itum,</i>	to tremble.
<i>Tribuo</i>	<i>-i</i>	<i>-tum,</i>	to attribute.
<i>Tundo</i>	<i>tutudi</i>	<i>tusum,</i>	to beat.
<i>Uro</i>	<i>ussi</i>	<i>ustum,</i>	to burn.
<i>Veho</i>	<i>-xi</i>	<i>-ctum,</i>	to carry.
<i>Vello</i>	<i>-li</i>	<i>vulsum,</i>	to pluck.
<i>Verro</i>	<i>-ri</i>	<i>-sum,</i>	to brush.
<i>Verto</i>	<i>-ti</i>	<i>-sum,</i>	to turn.
<i>Vinco</i>	<i>vici</i>	<i>victum,</i>	to conquer.
<i>Vivo</i>	<i>-xi</i>	<i>-ctum,</i>	to live.
<i>Volvo</i>	<i>-vi</i>	<i>-utum,</i>	to roll.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

The following verbs differ either in the perfect, or in the supine, or in both, from the regular form in *īvi, ītum* :—

Present.	Perfect.	Supine.	
<i>Amicio</i>	(wanting)	<i>-tum,</i>	to clothe.
<i>Aperio</i>	<i>-ui</i>	<i>-tum,</i>	to open.
<i>Farcio</i>	<i>-si</i>	{ <i>-tum (-ctum)</i> and <i>-sum,</i> }	to stuff.
<i>Ferio</i>	<i>percussi*</i>	(wanting),	to strike.
<i>Ferocio</i>	(wanting)	(wanting),	to be wild.
<i>Fulcio</i>	<i>-si</i>	<i>-tum,</i>	to prop.
<i>Haurio</i>	<i>-si</i>	<i>-stum,</i>	to draw.
<i>Raucio</i>	<i>-si</i>	{ <i>-sum</i> (very rare), }	to be hoarse.

\* Instead of the perfect.

Present.	Perfect.	Supine.	
<i>Salio</i>	-ui and -ii	<i>saltum</i> ,	to spring.
<i>Sancio</i>	{ -xi (also -i <i>ci</i> and -ii)	{ -itum and -ctum, }	to decree, to sanction.
<i>Sarcio</i>	-si	-itum,	to patch.
<i>Sentio</i>	-si	-sum,	to feel, to think.
<i>Sepelio</i>	-i <i>ci</i>	-ultum,	to bury.
<i>Sepio</i>	-si	-tum,	to hedge in.
<i>Venio</i>	-ēni	-tum,	to come.
<i>Vincio</i>	-xi	-tum,	to bind.

*Note.*—The *desiderative verbs* in *urio* have neither perfect nor supine, except *esurio* and *parturio*, which make *i*ci** for the perfect, but have no supine.

## DEPONENT VERBS.

### *List of Irregular Deponent Verbs.*

#### SECOND CONJUGATION.

Present.	Perfect.	
<i>Fateor</i>	<i>fassus sum</i> ,	to acknowledge.
<i>Mereor</i>	{ <i>merui</i> and <i>meri-</i> <i>tus sum</i> , }	to deserve.
<i>Misereor</i>	{ <i>miserui</i> and <i>mi-</i> <i>sertus sum</i> , }	to pity.
<i>Reor</i>	<i>ratus sum</i> ,	to think.

#### THIRD CONJUGATION.

Present.	Perfect.	
<i>Adipiscor</i>	<i>adeptus sum</i> ,	to obtain.
<i>Fruor</i>	{ <i>fruitus</i> and <i>fruc-</i> <i>tus sum</i> , }	to enjoy.

Present.	Perfect.	
<i>Gradior</i>	<i>gressus sum,</i>	to proceed.
<i>Irascor</i>	<i>iratus sum,</i>	to grow angry.
<i>Labor</i>	<i>lapsus sum,</i>	to fall.
<i>Loquor</i>	<i>locutus sum,</i>	to speak.
<i>Morior</i>	<i>mortuus sum,</i>	to die.
<i>Nanciscor</i>	<i>nactus sum,</i>	to obtain.
<i>Nascor</i>	<i>natus sum,</i>	to be born.
<i>Nitor</i>	{ <i>nisus, or nixus</i> }	to strive.
	<i>sum,</i>	
<i>Obliviscor</i>	<i>oblitus sum,</i>	to forget.
<i>Paciscor</i>	<i>pactus sum,</i>	to make a bargain.
<i>Pascor</i>	<i>pastus sum,</i>	to feed.
<i>Patior</i>	<i>passus sum,</i>	to suffer.
<i>Proficiscor</i>	<i>profectus sum,</i>	to travel.
<i>Queror</i>	<i>questus sum,</i>	to complain.
<i>Sequor</i>	<i>secutus sum,</i>	to follow.
<i>Ulciscor</i>	<i>ultus sum,</i>	to revenge.
<i>Utor</i>	<i>usus sum,</i>	to use.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Present.	Perfect.	
<i>Experior</i>	<i>expertus sum,</i>	to experience.
<i>Metior</i>	<i>mensus sum,</i>	to measure.
<i>Opperior</i>	<i>oppertus sum,</i>	to wait for.
<i>Ordior</i>	<i>orsus sum,</i>	to begin.
<i>Orior</i>	<i>ortus sum,</i>	to rise.

*List of Verbs which, though the same in form, differ in meaning.*

1. Those that differ in meaning in the present tense ;  
as,—

*Aggero*, -as, to heap up ; *aggero*, -is, to bring together.

*Appello*, -as, to call ; *appello*, -is, to arrive.

*Colligo*, -as, to bind ; *colligo*, -is, to gather together.

*Compello*, -as, to address ; *compello*, -is, to bribe.

*Consterno*, -as, to astonish ; *consterno*, -is, to strew.

*Effero*, -as, to enrage ; *effero*, -fers, to bring out.

*Fundo*, -as, to found ; *fundo*, -is, to pour out.

*Mando*, -as, to command ; *mando*, -is, to chew.

*Obsero*, -as, to lock ; *obsero*, -is, to beset.

*Volo*, -as, to fly ; *volo*, vis, to will.

An accent also causes a difference in meaning ; as,—

*Cōlo*, -as, to strain ; *cōlo*, -is, to till.

*Dīco*, -as, to dedicate ; *dīco*, -is, to say.

*Edūco*, -as, to train up ; *edūco*, -is, to lead forth.

*Lēgo*, -as, to send ; *lēgo*, -is, to read.

*Vādo*, -as, to wave ; *vādo*, -is, to go.

2. Those that differ in meaning in the perfect tense ;  
as,—

*Aceo*, *acui*, to be sour ; *acuo*, *acui*, to sharpen.

*Cresco*, *crevi*, to grow ; *cerno*, *crevi*, to see.

*Frigeo*, *frixi*, to be cold ; *frigo*, *frixi*, to fry.

*Fulgeo*, *fulsi*, to shine ; *fulcio*, *fulsi*, to prop.

*Luceo*, *luxi*, to glisten ; *lugeo*, *luxi*, to mourn.

*Paveo*, *pavi*, to be afraid ; *pasco*, *pavi*, to feed.

*Pendeo*, *pendi*, to hang ; *pendo*, *pendi*, to weigh.

3. Those that differ in meaning in the supine ; as,—

*Cresco*, *cretum*, to grow ; *cerno*, *cretum*, to behold.

*Maneo*, *mansum*, to stay ; *mando*, *mansum*, to chew.



*Sto, statum*, to stand ; *sisto, statum*, to stop.

*Succenseo, -censum*, to be angry ; *succendo, -censum*, to kindle.

*Teneo, tentum*, to hold ; *tendo, tentum*, to stretch out.

*Verro, versum*, to sweep ; *verto, versum*, to turn.

*Vinco, victum*, to overcome ; *vivo, victum*, to live.

### *Remarks on the Terminations of Verbs.*

1. Frequentatives end in *sco, cto*, and *ito*. They all belong to the first conjugation.

2. Inceptives, or inchoatives, end in *sco*. These belong to the third conjugation, and are formed from substantives, adjectives, and verbs.

3. Desideratives end in *urio*. These belong to the fourth conjugation, and are formed from the future participle active of the simple verb.

## A D V E R B S.

An Adverb is an indeclinable part of speech, joined to verbs, nouns, adjectives, and sometimes even to other adverbs, to qualify them ; as, *Scribit m̃le*, 'He writes badly.'

Adverbs are really old forms of the ablative case of the adjectives from which they are derived. Those formed from adjectives of three terminations generally end in *è* ; as, *doctè* ; those from other adjectives, in *ter* ; as, *sapienter*.

Adverbs are thus compared :—

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
<i>Doctè,</i>	<i>doctiùs,</i>	<i>doctissimè.</i>
<i>Sapienter,</i>	<i>sapientiùs,</i>	<i>sapientissimè.</i>

## CONJUNCTIONS.

A Conjunction is an indeclinable part of speech, which joins sentences together.

Conjunctions may be divided, in reference to their meaning, into the following classes:—

1. Those which connect things that are distinct from each other are called Disjunctive Conjunctions. They are, —*aut, vel, ne, sive, seu, si.*

2. Those which denote things of the same kind are called Copulative Conjunctions. They are, *et, at, atque, que* enclitic, and *neque* or *nec*, containing a negation which belongs to the verb, and *nec* or *neque non*, equivalent to *et*.

3. These express a comparison,—*ut (uti), sicut, velut, prout, ceu, quam, tanquam, quasi, ut, si, ac si*; with *ac* and *atque* when they mean ‘as’ or ‘than.’

4. These express a concession,—*etsi, etiamsi, tametsi, quanquam, quamvis, quantumvis, quamlibet, licet*; with *ut* and *quum* when they mean ‘although.’

5. These express a condition,—*si, sin, nisi* or *ni, si modo, dummodo*, ‘provided only;’ *dummodo ne*, ‘provided only not,’ for which *modo ne* and *dum ne* alone are used.

6. These express an inference,—*ergo, igitur, itaque, ideo, idcirco, proinde, propterea*, and the relative particles *quapropter, quare, quamobrem, quocirca, unde*.

7. These express a cause or reason,—*nam, namque, enim, etenim, quia, quod, quoniam, quippe, quum, quando, quandoquidem, siquidem*.

8. These express an opposition, and are called *Adversative*,—*sed, autem, verum, vero, ut atqui, tamen, attamen, sed tamen, veruntamen, at vero, enimvero, cæterum*.

9. These express time,—*quum, quum primum, ut, ut primum, ubi, postquam, antequam* and *priusquam, quando, simul ac* or *simul atque, dum, usque dum, quoad, donec*.

10. These are *interrogative*,—*num*, *utrum*, *an*, *ne* (enclitic,—which is also added to the three preceding,—*numne*, *utrumne*, *anne*), *nonne*, *ec* (found in *ecquando* and *ecquid*), and *numquid*.

Conjunctions, for the most part, are placed at the beginning of the sentence which they introduce. *Enim*, *autem*, *vero*, are generally placed after the first word, or even the second, when both belong to each other, or one is the auxiliary verb *esse*; seldom further than after the second. *Itaque* stands at the beginning, *igitur* after one or more words.

## PREPOSITIONS.

A Preposition is an indeclinable part of speech, which expresses the relation of nouns to each other or to verbs; as, *Per urbem ambulat*, 'He walks through the city.'

The following prepositions govern an accusative case:—

*Ad*, to.

*Adversum*, *adversus*, against,  
towards.

*Ante*, before.

*Apud*, at or near.

*Circa*, *circum*, about.

*Circiter*, about.

*Cis*, *citra*, on this side.

*Contra*, against.

*Erga*, towards.

*Extra*, without.

*Infra*, beneath, below.

*Inter*, between, or among.

*Intra*, within.

*Juxta*, beside, or near to.

*Ob*, on account of, before.

*Penes*, in the power of.

*Per*, through.

*Pone*, behind.

*Post*, after.

*Præter*, besides, except,  
before.

*Prope*, nigh, or near to.

*Propter*, on account of,  
near to.

*Secundum*, according to.

*Supra*, above.

*Trans*, beyond, on the fur-  
ther side.

*Ultra*, beyond.

*Usque* (properly an adverb),  
as far as.

*Versus*, towards.

*Note*.—*Versus* always follows its case; as, *urbem versus*, 'towards the city;' and so may *penes* and *usque*.

The following prepositions govern the ablative case :—

*A* (and before consonants *ab*), from, by.

*Abque*, without.

*Coram*, before, or in the presence of.

*Cum*, with.

*De*, from, concerning.

*E*, *ex*, from, out of.

*Præ*, before, in comparison of, on account of.

*Pro*, for, in front of.

*Sine*, without.

*Tenus*, up to, as far as.

*Note*.—*Tenus* frequently follows a *genitive case*.

The following prepositions govern either the accusative or the ablative case, according to the sense :—

*In* signifying ‘into,’ ‘motion towards,’ ‘against,’ ‘over,’ &c., governs the *accusative case*; as, *Eo in ecclesiam*, ‘I go into the church.’

*In* signifying ‘in,’ ‘rest,’ governs the *ablative case*; as, *In ecclesiâ maneo*, ‘I remain in the church.’

*Sub* after verbs of motion governs the *accusative case*, and also when it denotes time; as, *Scamnum sub pedem dare*, ‘to put a stool under the foot;’ *sub noctem*, ‘at night-fall.’ When it signifies ‘under,’ it governs the *ablative case*; as, *sub terrâ*, ‘under the earth.’

*Subter*, ‘under,’ ‘beneath,’ governs the *accusative case*,—the *ablative* but very rarely; as, *subter litore*, ‘under the shore.’

*Super*, when it means ‘on,’ ‘above,’ ‘besides,’ governs the *accusative case*; as, *super terram*, ‘above the earth.’ When it means ‘concerning,’ ‘about,’ ‘upon,’ it governs the *ablative case*; as, *Hâc super re scribam*, ‘I will write about this thing;’ *Super arbore sidunt*, ‘they alight upon a tree.’

*Note 1.*—Besides these regular prepositions, some adverbs are occasionally used as prepositions, especially in poetry.

*Palam*, 'in the presence of,' governs the *ablative case*.

*Procul* (more usually *procul à*), 'far from,' governs the *ablative case*.

*Simul* (for *simul cum*), 'together with,' governs the *ablative case*.

*Clam*, 'without the knowledge,' usually has an *ablative* after it.

*Note 2.*—*Contra, juxta, pone, ante, extra, infra, prope, propter, supra, ultra, super, subter, clam, and coram*, are often used as adverbs.

## INTERJECTIONS.

An Interjection is an indeclinable part of speech which betokens a sudden emotion of the mind, be it grief, joy, or passion. The following is a list of the principal interjections:—

1. Those that denote joy ; as, *Io, iu, ha, hahade, evax, evoë.*
2. „ „ grief ; as, *Heu, eh eu, εα, hei, ohe, pro, au.*
3. „ „ praise ; as, *Eia, euge.*
4. „ „ astonishment ; as, *O, en or ecce, hem, papa, ahah.*
5. „ „ calling ; as, *Heus, o, ohe, ehodun.*
6. „ „ dislike ; as, *Pheu, apage.*
7. „ „ attestation ; as, *Pro* (written also *proh*).

## PART III.—SYNTAX.

## CHAPTER I.

AGREEMENT OF THE SUBJECT, OR NOMINATIVE CASE,  
AND PREDICATE, OR VERB.

1. A verb must agree with its nominative case in number and person ; as,

*Puer audit*,—‘The boy hears.’

*Pueri audiunt*,—‘The boys hear.’

If a part of the verb admits a change of gender, the part of the verb that admits the change must also be in the same gender as the nominative ; as,

*Puer profectus est*,—‘The boy set out.’

*Puella profecta est*,—‘The girl set out.’

2. A collective noun, or noun of multitude,—as, *multitudo*, ‘a multitude ;’ *gens*, ‘a nation ;’ *plebs*, ‘the common people ;’ *vis*, ‘force or violence ;’ *turba*, ‘a crowd,’—seldom has in prose a plural verb in the same sentence ; but if two sentences are joined together having the same nominative, the second verb may be put in the plural ; as,

*Multitudo convenit et decreverunt*.

‘The multitude assembled and decreed.’

But *pars*, ‘a part ;’ *uterque*, ‘both ;’ *quisque*, ‘every one ;’ *alias* or *alter*, ‘another,’ are often joined with a plural verb, on account of the idea of plurality which is implied in them ; as,

*Uterque eorum ex castris exercitum educunt*.

‘Each of them draws out the army from the camp.’

3. When the subject consists of several nouns in the singular, the verb must be always in the plural if they denote living beings, and especially *persons* ; as,

*Apud Regillum Castor et Pollux ex equis pugnare visi sunt.*

‘Castor and Pollux *were seen* to fight on horseback at Lake Regillus.’

But if they denote *things without life*, and especially *abstract ideas*, the verb may be in the singular or plural, unless one of the nouns should be in the plural ; as,

*Cum tempus necessitasque postulat, decertandum manu est.*

‘When the occasion and necessity requires, one must fight with one’s own hand.’

*Beneficium et gratia homines inter se conjungunt.*

‘Kindness and gratitude link men together.’

4. A verb placed between two nominatives of the same person, but of different numbers, may agree with either of them, but generally it agrees with the latter ; as,

*Pectus quoque robora fiunt.*

‘Her breast also becomes oak.’

*Omnia pontus erant,*—‘Everything was sea.’

5. When pronouns of different persons are joined in one subject, or nouns with pronouns of the first and second persons, the verb agrees with the first in preference to the second, and the second in preference to the third ; as,

*Si tu et Tullia valetis, ego et suavisimus Cicero valemus.*

If thou and Tullia are well, I and dearest Cicero are well.’

## CHAPTER II.

## ACCUSATIVE WITH INFINITIVE.

1. The infinitive often takes before it, not the nominative, but the accusative.

Very many sentences that in English are joined to a verb by the conjunction '*that*,' are expressed in Latin by the *accusative* and the *infinitive*; and in rendering such sentences into Latin, '*that*' must be omitted; the English *nominative* converted into the *accusative*, and the English verb into the *infinitive* mood of the same tense.

2. The accusative with the infinitive follows verbs (*sentiendi et declarandi*) of *feeling, knowing, wishing, hearing, believing, thinking, &c.*, and such expressions as, '*it is certain, manifest, &c.* ; as,

*Omnis illa antiqua philosophia sensit vitam beatam in unâ virtute positam esse.*

'All that ancient philosophy thought that a happy life was placed in virtue alone.'

*Respondet te esse bonum puerum.*

'He answers that you are a good boy.'

*Certum est, te moriturum esse.*

'It is certain that you will die.'

After the verbs *sperare*, '*to hope*;' *promittere* or *polliceri*, '*to promise*;' *recipere*, '*to engage or undertake*,' the *future infinitive* is used instead of the present infinitive with the *accusative* of the pronoun; which accusative must be also expressed after *simulare*, '*to pretend*;' as,

*Spero me negotium confecturum (esse).*

'I hope to finish the business.'

*Promisit se venturum*,—'*He promised to come.*'

*Puer recepit se omnia facturum.*

'The boy undertook to do everything.'

*Simulat se furere*,—'*He pretends to be mad.*'



## CHAPTER III.

AGREEMENT OF THE ADJECTIVE WITH ITS  
SUBSTANTIVE.

1. All adjectives, pronouns, and participles agree with their substantive in *gender, number, and case* ; as,

*Bonus pater suum filium puniet.*

‘The good father will punish his son.’

2. When an adjective agrees with several singular substantives, it will be in the plural number, and agree with the *most worthy*. The masculine gender is more worthy than the feminine, and the feminine (in things animate) more worthy than the neuter ; as,

*Puer et puella boni sunt*,—‘The boy and girl are good.’

*Pater mihi et mater mortui sunt.*

‘My father and mother are dead.’

3. If the things are without life, and of different genders, the neuter gender is used ; as,

*Beneficium et injuria inter se contraria sunt.*

‘A benefit and an injury are contrary to each other.’

4. If some, however, of the nouns are with, and some without life, either the neuter gender or the gender of the thing without life can be used ; as,

*Janus, fac æternos pacem pacisque ministros.*

‘Janus, make peace and the ministers of peace eternal.’

5. When the noun is *man, woman*, the adjective may be used alone, the noun being understood, from which it takes its gender ; as,

*Boni, sapientesque pulsi sunt.*

‘The good and wise have been banished.’

An adjective in the neuter gender, in particular, is used without a substantive ; as,

*Respice præteritum*,—‘ Look back to the past.’

*Omnia mea mecum porto*.

‘ I am carrying all my property with me.’

6. Adjectives relating indefinitely to *magnitude*, *quantity*, &c., are used in Latin without a substantive in the *neuter plural*, where in English the singular is used ; as,

*Multa*, ‘ much ;’ *pauca*, ‘ little ;’ *permulta*, ‘ very much ;’ *perpauca*, ‘ very little.’

7. An adjective qualifying the substantive is sometimes used, instead of an adverb modifying the verb, especially in poetry ; as,

*Æneas se matutinus agebat*,

‘ Æneas put himself in motion early.’

## CHAPTER IV.

### THE RELATIVE.

1. In a relative sentence, each clause has its own verb and its own independent construction.

2. When a pronoun refers to a noun in a preceding sentence, called the antecedent (or foregoing substantive), it is put in the gender and number with that noun, but takes its case from the verb in its own sentence ; as,

*Ille puer, quem vidisti, mortuus est*.

‘ That boy whom thou hast seen, is dead.’

3. The antecedent is sometimes expressed in the relative and omitted in the principal clause ; as,

*Accepi quas literas ad me dedisti*.

‘ I have received the letters which you addressed to me.’

*Note 1.*—When this happens, the relative clause is often placed first, the antecedent being expressed in *it*, and represented in the principal clause by *is* or *hic* ; as,

*Quibus rebus efficiuntur voluptates, hæ non sunt in potestate sapientis.*

‘The things by which pleasures are produced, are not in the power of a wise man.’

*Note 2.*—The ‘*is*’ is often left out when *man* or *thing* is meant, or when the verbs govern the same case ; as,

*Qui facile credit, facile decipitur.*

‘He who easily believes, is easily deceived.’

4. The infinitive mood of a verb, as it does no more than *name* the action or state denoted by the verb, may be considered a *verbal substantive* of the *neuter gender*. It may also be the *antecedent* to a *relative*, which will be in the *neuter gender* ; as,

*Jucundum est laudari,*—‘It is pleasant to be praised.’

5. When the relative refers to the *whole statement* made by a sentence, *id quod* is frequently used instead of *quod*, *id* being in apposition to the former sentence ; as,

*Nec minus vellent te, Cato, tollere ; id quod moliantur.*

‘Nor do they less wish to destroy thee, Cato, *which* they are contriving.’

The use of *id quod* for *quod* is to add emphasis to the relative clause.

6. When two substantives of different genders, &c., are connected by the relative (by means of the verb ‘*to be*,’ or a verb of *naming*, *calling*, &c.), the relative *generally* takes the gender and number of the *following* noun ; as,

*Thebæ, quod Bæotiæ caput est.*

‘Thebes, which is the capital of Bæotia.’

*Homines tuentur illum globum, quæ terra dicitur.*

‘Men regard that globe which is called the earth.’

*Note 1.*—When the second noun is a *foreign* word, the relative *generally* agrees with its antecedent ; as,

*Est quoddam genus hominum, quod Helotes vocatur.*

‘There is a certain race of man which is called Helots.’

*Note 2.*—If the sentence to which the relative refers, consists of a common and a proper noun, the relative may take its gender from either of them ; as,

*Flumen est Arar, quod per fines Æduorum et Sequanorum in Rhodanum influit.*

‘There is a river (called) Arar (the Saône), which runs through the territories of the Ædui and Sequani into the Rhone.’

7. When the relative is joined to an adjective in the superlative degree, the adjective is generally put in the same member of the sentence as the relative ; as,

*Themistocles servum quem fidelissimus habuit, ad Xerxem misit.*

‘Themistocles sent the most faithful slave he had to Xerxes.’

8. A relative sentence is not used to denote ‘the first person who did a thing ;’ but *primus* is made to agree with the nominative of the principal verb ; as,

*Primus hoc fecit,*—‘He was the first who did this.’

9. The relative sometimes takes its gender and number from the personal pronoun which is understood in the possessive ; as

*Vestrâ qui cum summâ integritate vixistis, hoc maxime interest.*

‘This is of the greatest consequence to you, *who* have lived with the greatest integrity.’

10. The relative pronouns *qui, qualis, quantus, quot,*  
Answer respectively to *is, talis, tantus, tot.*

*Non speraverat Hannibal fore ut tot populi ad se deficerent, quot defecerunt post Cannensem cladem.*

‘Hannibal had not hoped that so many nations would revolt to him as revolted after the battle of Cannæ.’

*Note 1.*—The word ‘*that*’ is often a relative pronoun, especially after an adjective in the superlative degree; after the interrogative pronoun *who*; ‘*the same*,’ and when *persons* and *things* are denoted.

*Note 2.*—The word ‘*as*’ is often *in effect* a *relative pronoun*; and when it is so, it must be translated by *qui idem*, and by *qualis* after *talis*, &c.; as,

*Tu es idem, qui semper fuisti.*

‘Thou art the same that (or as) thou hast ever been.’

*Note 3.*—The word ‘*but*’ following universal negatives is to be regarded as a relative pronoun; as,

*Nemo est qui te non amat.*

‘There is no one but loves you.’

The *qui non* is often rendered by ‘*quin*.’

## CHAPTER V.

### PRONOUNS.

1. The nominative of personal pronouns is only expressed when some *particular distinction* of the person is required; as,

*Ego reges ejeci, vos tyrannos introducitis.*

‘I drove out kings, ye are introducing tyrants.’

2. The genitive of the plural of *ego* and *tu*,—viz., *nostrum* or *nostri*, *vestrum* or *vestri*, is thus used:—*Nostrum* and *vestrum* are used after partitives (including numerals, comparatives, and superlatives); *nostri* and *vestri* are used in all other connections; as, *Primus nostrum*, ‘first of us.’ *Miserere nostri*, ‘Have pity upon us.’

3. *Meus*, 'mine ;' *tuus*, 'thine ;' *suus*, 'his own,' &c., take after them *ipsius* or *ipsorum* (according to the number meant), when the word 'own' is to be more emphatically expressed ; as,

*De tuo ipsius studio conjecturam ceperis.*

'You may guess by your own study.'

4. *Sui* (dat. *sibi*) and its possessive *suus* are reflective pronouns ; i. e., they refer back to the nominative of the verb after which they stand ; as,

*Se ipsos naturâ diligunt homines.*

'Men naturally love themselves.'

5. *His*, *him*, *her*, *their*, denoting the nominative of the principal sentence, must be translated by *sui*, or *suus*, when there is no doubt as to its being the nominative of its own verb ; as,

*Alexander moriens annulum suum dedit Perdiccæ.*

'Alexander dying gave his ring to Perdiccas.'

But when there is any doubt whatever as to *sui* or *suus* being the nominative of the verb, then *his*, *him*, *her*, *their*, must be translated by *ipse* ; as,

*Qui ipsis imperat, bonus est vir.*

'(He) who governs them is a good man.'

If you were to say *Qui sibi imperat*, it may mean, 'he who governs himself.'

6. *Hic*, *ille*, *iste*, *is*, differ thus :—*Hic* refers to that which is near, or belongs to the person speaking ; *iste*, to the person addressed ; *ille*, to some more remote person or object.

*Note 1.*—*Ille*, from relating to the past, may denote that which has long been known ; and hence it denotes that which is of general notoriety and reputation ; as,

*Magnus ille Alexander.*

'The celebrated Alexander the Great.'

*Note 2.*—*Ille* is used before *quidem*, to signify ‘it is true,’ ‘indeed,’ but must always be followed by a ‘but ;’ as,

*Malus est puer ille quidem ; sed tamen corrigi potest.*

‘He is a bad boy, it is true ; but yet he can be corrected.’

*Note 3.*—*Iste* may be reckoned no more than a demonstrative of the second person, equivalent to ‘that of yours ;’ as,

*Ista civitas*,—‘That state of yours.’

*Note 4.*—*Is* joined with *et* or *que* is equivalent to ‘that too.’

7. Of two things already mentioned, *hic* relates to the nearer,—the *latter* ; *ille*, to the more remote,—the *former* ; as,

*Cæsar munificentia magnus habebatur, integritate vitæ Cato ; ille mansuetudine clarus factus ; huic severitas dignitatem addiderat.*

‘Cæsar was accounted great for his liberality, Cato for the integrity of his life ; the *former* was illustrious for his merciful disposition ; to the *latter* the strictness of life had added dignity.’

8. *Quisquam*, ‘any one,’ and *ullus*, ‘any,’ are used in sentences in which *all are excluded* ; that is, in sentences that are *really* or *virtually negative* ; and after the adverb *vix*, ‘scarcely,’ and the preposition *sine*, ‘without ;’ as,

*An quisquam tempestatibus potest moderari ?*

‘Can any man govern the seasons ?’

*Note.*—*Quisquam* is used *without a substantive*, *ullus* generally with a *substantive*. In the feminine of the nominative, accusative, and ablative singular, and throughout the whole of the plural, where *quisquam* is unusual, *ullus* is, however, used *substantively*.

9. *Quiris* and *quilibet*, ‘any one,’ are used in sentences in which *all are included* ; that is, in sentences where ‘any’ means ‘any one you please,’ ‘every ;’ as,

*Cuivis facile est te noscere.*

‘It is *easy* for any one to know you.’

10. *Aliquis* and *quispiam* are equivalent to the English 'some one,' 'some one or other ;' as,

*Quispiam dicet me malum esse.*

'Some one may say that I am wicked.'

11. The indefinite article *a* may sometimes be translated by *quidam*, *aliquis*, or *quispiam*, when a 'certain' or 'some' may be substituted for 'a ;' as, *poeta aliquis*, 'any, or a, poet ;' *servus quispiam*, 'some slave' ('any, or a, slave').

12. *Quis* is used instead of *aliquis* after *si*, *nisi*, *num*, *ne*, *quo*; *quanto*, and sometimes *quum* ; and then generally its feminine singular and neuter plural end in *a* ; as, *siqua*, &c.

*Note.*—*Aliquis* is used when the word 'any' or 'some' is *emphatic*.

13. The interrogative pronoun *quis* has two forms for the masculine and neuter genders,—*quis* and *qui* for the masculine, *quid* and *quod* for the neuter.

*Quid* is used as a substantive, *quod* with a substantive ; as, *Quid temporis ? Quod tempus fuit ?*

14. *Quisque* signifies 'every one ;' and though it is usually used as a substantive, yet, in consequence of its being a sort of *enclitic*, it *never* stands at the beginning of a sentence in prose, and very seldom in poetry ; as,

*Quod cuique obigit, id quisque teneat.*

'Let everybody keep what has fallen to his share.'

*Note 1.*—*Quisque*, when subjoined to the cases of *sui* or *suus*, and *numerals*, should immediately follow their cases ; as, *Sua cuique virtuti laus propria debetur decimus quisque*.

*Note 2.*—The word 'always,' after one superlative and before another, may be translated by *quisque*, which will agree with the same substantive that the superlatives agree with ; as, *Optimum quidque rarissimum est*.



15. *Idem*, 'the same,' often supplies the place of a copulative conjunction ; as,

*Nîl liberale est quod non idem justum.*

'Nothing is liberal which is not also just.'

16. *Alius* is used with one of its own cases, or an adverb derived from it, to express what in English requires two separate sentences ; as,

*Aliud alii natura iter ostendit.*

'Nature points out one path to one man, another to another.'

*Aliter cum hominibus locutus est.*

'He spoke in one way to one man, another to another.'

*Note.*—When speaking of two persons, *alter* is used ; as,

*Alter in alterum causam confert.*

'Each lays the blame on the other.'

## CHAPTER VI.

### THE NOMINATIVE CASE (APPOSITION).

1. The nominative case is called '*casus rectus*,' to distinguish it from the rest, which are called '*obliqui*.' It immediately governs the verb ; as,

*Puer discit*,—'The boy learns.'

2. When a noun is followed by another noun (without a *preposition*), which explains or describes it, the *latter noun* is said to be in *apposition* to the *former noun*.

3. A noun in *apposition* must agree in *case* with the substantive of *which* it is spoken ; as,

*Romulus, rex Romæ*,—'Romulus, king of Rome.'

*Philosophia, magistra morum.*

'Philosophy, the teacher of morals.'

4. If the principal noun be the name of *a town*, with *oppidum* or *urbs* in apposition to it, the verb or participle usually agrees with the *apposition* instead of the principal noun ; as,

*Apiolæ, oppidum Latinorum, ab rege Tarquinio captum est.*

‘*Apiolæ*, a town of the Latins, was taken by King Tarquinius.’

*Note.*—The English words ‘when,’ ‘as,’ ‘for,’ standing with a noun, are often left out, and the Latin placed in *apposition* ; as,

*Servus puero comes datur.*

‘A slave is given to the boy *as* a companion.’

5. The *noun*, *pronoun*, or *adjective* containing the answer to a question must be in the same *case* as the word which contains the question ; as,

*Quis legit ? Puer,*—‘Who reads ? The boy.’

*Cujus operâ puer legit ? Præceptoris.*

‘By whose agency does the boy read ? The master’s.’

#### NOMINATIVE AFTER VERBS (ATTRACTION OF THE PREDICATE).

1. The subject of a sentence is in the nominative case, except the accusative with the infinitive.

2. The noun of the predicate will be in *the same case as the subject*, after the following verbs :—

First.—Verbs of *existence* ; as, *sum, fio, existo, nascor, reddor, evado* ; as,

*Ego sum dives,*—‘I am rich.’

*Ex nitido fit rusticus.*

‘From a smart man he becomes a clown.’

*Puer orator evadet.*

‘The boy will turn out an orator.’

Second.—Verbs passive, denoting *name* or *title*; as, *appellor, dicor, vocor, nominor, salutor*; as,

*Opiferque per orbem dior.*

‘I am called helper all over the world.’

Third.—Verbs passive, denoting *estimation* or *opinion*; as, *credor, habeor, existimor, videor, putor, judicor, numeror, &c.*; as,

*Fides religionis nostræ fundamentum habetur.*

‘Faith is reckoned the foundation of our religion.’

*Bellum ita suscipiatur, ut nihil aliud nisi pax quæsitâ videatur.*

‘Let war be so undertaken, that nothing else but peace may seem to be sought for.’

Fourth.—Verbs passive, denoting *election* and *appointment*; as, *creor, eligor, declaror, &c.*; as,

*Numa Pompilius rex creatus est.*

‘Numa Pompilius was made king.’

3. After verbs of *wishing* and *declaring*, the accusative of the pronoun is sometimes expressed and sometimes left out; if the accusative is left out before the infinitive, the noun or participle with the infinitive is what is called *attracted* into the nominative case; as,

*Optat esse beatus* (for *se esse beatum*).

‘He wishes to be happy.’

*Dicit esse neglectus* (for *se esse neglectum*).

‘He says that he is neglected.’

*Note 1.*—When the verb *esse, &c.*, has a pronoun in the accusative case as its subject, which is the usual construction, and this accusative of the pronoun denotes the same person as the *object* (in the dative) of *licet*, the accusative pronoun is generally left out, and the noun after *esse* either

remains in the accusative, or is *attracted* into the *dative* (which is the more common form) ; as,

*Tibi superbo esse non licet*,—‘ You may not be proud.’

*Miseros esse non licet*,—‘ We may not be miserable.’

*Note*.—The genitive and ablative are never attracted.

## CHAPTER VII.

### THE GENITIVE CASE.

1. The genitive case is known by the sign ‘*of*,’ or ‘*belonging to*,’ and is generally the latter of two substantives of different significations ; as,

*Vis conscientiæ*,—‘ The power of conscience.’

2. The *genitive* is *subjective* when it denotes that which does something, or to which something belongs ; as,

*Hominis ars*,—‘ The art of man.’

*Puellæ liber*,—‘ The girl’s book.’

The genitive is *objective* when it denotes that which is the object of the feeling or action spoken of ; as,

*Amor Dei*,—‘ The love of God.’

The objective genitive *generally* follows the noun on which it depends.

3. Partitive adjectives (that is, those that express some persons or things reckoned as parts of a larger number), such as ‘*which*,’ ‘*every*,’ ‘*each*,’ ‘*both*,’ &c. &c., with *ordinal numerals*, *comparatives*, and *superlatives*, govern a noun in the *genitive case* ; as,

*Quis unquam Græcorum rhetorum a Thucydide quidquam duxit ?*

‘ Who of the Greek rhetoricians ever drew anything from Thucydides ?’

*Utrum horum maior accipe ?*

‘ Which of these had you rather ? ’

*Manuum fortior est dextra.*

‘ The right is the stronger of the hands. ’

*Minima malorum eligenda sunt.*

‘ The least of evils are to be chosen. ’

*Note 1.*—Partitives are often followed by the prepositions *de*, *e*, *ex*, *inter*, with their respective cases ; as,

*Alterum de duobus est necesse.*

‘ One of the two must necessarily take place. ’

*Unus ex iis*,—‘ One of them. ’

*Primus inter homines*,—‘ First among men. ’

*Note 2.*—The comparative is used when speaking of *two persons* or *things* ; the superlative, when speaking of *more than two*.

*Note 3.*—The gender of the partitive adjective is usually the same as the gender of the governed genitive.

4. The genitive is often used to express *quality* ; but the noun in the genitive must have an *adjective* to agree with it ; as,

*Vir summæ virtutis*,—‘ A man of eminent virtue. ’

(You could not say, *Vir virtutis*.)

The ablative may also be used ; as, *Vir summâ virtute* ; with this distinction, that the *genitive* denotes a *permanent*, the *ablative* a *temporary* state.

5. If the name of a town *where* anything is done be of *the first* or *second* declension and singular number, it is put in the *genitive* ; as,

*Romæ vivit*,—‘ He lives at Rome. ’

6. The nominative and accusative neuter singular of pronouns and of some adjectives govern a genitive case ;

as, *tantum, quantum, &c. &c.* ; *quid, aliquid, quidquam, &c.* ; *hoc, illud, id, quod, &c.* ; as,

*Quantum pecuniæ?*—‘How much money?’

*Maximis in malis, hoc tamen boni assecuti videmur.*

‘In the greatest misfortunes, we seem, nevertheless, to have acquired thus much good.’

*Aliquid temporis,*—‘Some time.’

*Quid boni?*—‘What good?’

*Note.*—*Boni, mali, novi,* are used as *substantives* after *these neuters*.

7. Adverbs of *place*, as, *ubi, ubique, ubicunque, usquam, nusquam, huc, eo, quo,* are joined with the genitives *terrarum, gentium, loci, locorum* ; also adverbs that express *degree* govern a genitive case ; as,

*Ubicunque terrarum et gentium violatum jus civium Romanorum est, ad communem libertatis causam pertinet.*

‘In whatever country and nations the rights of Roman citizens have been violated, it concerns the common cause of liberty.’

*Eo impudentiæ ventum est.*

‘Men are arrived to that degree of impudence.’

8. Adverbs of *quantity*, as, *satis, parum, abundè, affatim, partim,* govern a genitive case ; as,

*Satis eloquentiæ, sapientiæ parum.*

‘Enough of eloquence, a little wisdom.’

*Abundè fabularum audivimus.*

‘We have heard abundantly of tales.’

9. The following expressions, which denote a *point of time*, have a genitive case ; as,

*Tum temporis,*—‘At that time.’

*Ad id locorum,*—‘Up to that time.’

*Postea loci,*—‘Afterwards.’

*Pridie ejus diei pugnam inierunt.*

‘They began the battle the day before that day.’

10. The words *nihil*, *instar*, *causā*, *ergo*, and *gratiā*, govern a genitive case ; as,

*Nihil temporis*,—‘No time.’

*Plato est mihi instar omnium.*

‘Plato is to me equal to all.’

*Ibi pacis causā venimus.*

‘We came there for the sake of peace.’

*Virtutis ergo coronā aureā donetur.*

‘Let him be presented with a golden crown for the sake of virtue.’

*Note 1.*—All these words are substantives. *Instar* is an old substantive, signifying a *model* or *image* ; *ergo* (from the Greek ἔργον) : *gratiā* and *causā* are placed after the genitive.

*Note 2.*—*Id temporis*, ‘at that time ;’ *id* or *hoc ætatis*, ‘at that age,’ are used adverbially.

#### THE GENITIVE AFTER ADJECTIVES.

11. Adjectives which signify *desire*, *knowledge*, *memory*, *fear*, *participation*, and their contraries, together with many of those that express *fulness* or *emptiness*, and verbals in *ax*, govern the *genitive* case ; as,

*Cupidus sapientiæ*,—‘Desirous of wisdom.’

*Beneficii memor*,—‘Mindful of a kindness.’

*Timidus deorum*,—‘Fearful of the gods.’

*Insidiarum plenus*,—‘Full of plots.’

*Utriusque harum rerum humanus animus est expers.*

‘The human mind is free from each of these things.’

*Tempus edax rerum.*

‘Time is the consumer of all things.’

12. To this class also belong many participles *used adjectively*; as, *amans, appetens, fugiens, intelligens, negligens, patiens, &c.*; as,

*Amans virtutis*,—Attached to virtue; a lover of virtue.'

If they denote a *particular action, not a permanent quality*, they govern an *accusative case*.

#### THE GENITIVE AFTER VERBS.

13. The genitive is used with the verb *esse* as often as it signifies *possession, duty, sign, or the lot of any one*, the noun on which *it depends* being omitted; as,

*Regis est*,—‘It is the duty of a king.’  
(Here *officium* is understood.)

*Note*.—The genitive is used in the same way with *duci, facere, fieri, haberi*.

Instead of the genitives of the personal pronouns *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri*, the neuters *meum, tuum, suum, nostrum, vestrum*, are used in this sense; as,

*Tuum est, Cato, videre*.

‘It is your business, Cato, to look to it.’

*Nostrum est intelligere*.

‘It belongs to us to understand.’

14. Verbs of *accusing, condemning, acquitting, &c.*, take a genitive of the charge; as,

*Proditionis me accusavit*.

‘He accused me of treachery.’

*P. Sextus prætor designatus ambitus damnatus est*.

‘Publius Sextus nominated prætor was condemned for bribery.’

15. If the *charge* be denoted by a *neuter pronoun*, it is placed in the *accusative case*; as,

*Id virum accusat*,—‘He accuses the man of that.’



*Note 1.*—The ablative with *de* is very often used instead of the genitive ; as,

*De pecuniis repetundis damnatus est.*  
'He was condemned for extortion.'

*Note 2.*—The *punishment* to which a person is condemned is *usually* put in the *ablative*, often in the *accusative*, with *ad* or *in* ; and sometimes in the genitive especially with *capitis* and *voti*.

16. *Satago*, 'I am doing enough,' 'I have my hands full *misereor*, 'I commiserate ;' and *miseresco*, 'I pity,' require a genitive case : but *reminiscor*, 'I remember,' *obliscor*, 'I forget ;' *memini*, 'I remember ;' and *recordor*, 'I call to mind,' admit either the genitive or the accusative ; as,

*Qui mei misereri debent.*

'They who ought to take compassion on me.'

*Ego misereor ejus esuriei.*

'I pity his distress for provisions.'

*Recordare tempus illud*,—'Remember that time.'

*Cæsar oblivisci nihil solet nisi injurias.*

'Cæsar is wont to forget nothing but injuries.'

*Oblitum me putas consilii, sermonis, humanitatis tuæ?*

'Do you think that I have forgotten your advice, your discourse, your politeness?'

*Note.*—Whenever *memini* and *recordor* signify 'to make mention of,' *memini* requires the genitive, or ablative with *de* ; *recordor* takes the accusative.

17. Verbs of *esteeming*, *valuing*, *buying*, *selling*, &c., require a genitive of the cost or value when it is expressed by the following adjectives : *magni*, *tanti*, *quantum*, *pluris*, *minoris*, *plurimi*, *maximi*, *minimi*, *tantidem*, *quantumvis*, *quantilibet*, *quancumque* ; to which may be added

*lassis, flocci, nauci, pili, pensi* (which are generally used with a negative, or *si*) ; as,

*Tanti eris aliis, quanti tibi fueris.*

‘You will be of so much value to others as you shall have been to yourself.’

*Ego illum flocci pendo, nec hujus facio, qui me pili æstimat.*

‘I value him at a rush, nor do I regard him this (a snap of the finger and thumb), who esteems me (not) a hair.’

18. The following impersonal verbs take a genitive of the *object* which *causes* the feeling :—*piget, pudet, pœnitet, tædet, miseret* ; as,

*Me non solum piget stultitiæ, sed etiam pudet.*

‘I am not only sorry for my folly, but also ashamed of it.’

*Tædet me vitæ*,—‘I am tired of life.’

19. *Interest* takes a genitive of the person whose interest is concerned ; *refert* is very seldom (*if ever*) used with a genitive of the person, but with a *possessive pronoun* in the *ablative feminine* ; as, *meâ, tuâ, suâ, nostrâ, vestrâ*, &c. ; as,

*Interest omnium recte facere.*

‘It is the interest of all to do right.’

*Tuâ refert teipsum nōsse*,—‘It concerns you to know yourself.’

## CHAPTER VIII.

### THE DATIVE CASE.

1. The dative stands as the *remoter object* to which the action of a verb is directed. It depends not only on semi-transitive verbs, but also on adjectives whose sense does not end in themselves.

## THE DATIVE AFTER ADJECTIVES.

2. Adjectives which signify *advantage, likeness, agreeableness, injury, fitness, facility, &c.*, with their *contraries* together with those that signify *known* or *unknown* to take a dative case; as,

*Si facis ut patriæ sit idoneus, utilis agris.*

‘If you take care that he be serviceable to his country useful to the lands.’

*Jucundus meo patri sermo tuus fuit.*

‘Your discourse was pleasing to my father.’

*Note 1.*—Many of these adjectives take different constructions; as, *utilis ad rem* (for a particular purpose) *amicus, familiaris, inimicus, superstes, æqualis, affinis, vicinus, propinquus, finitimus*, are often treated as *substantives*, and as such require a genitive case: when used as adjectives, they are joined with a dative; as,

*Virtuti inimicus*,—‘Hostile to virtue.’

*Note 2.*—*Similis, dissimilis*, are used with a genitive of *real likeness* in nature, character, &c.,—with a dative of *external or outward resemblance*.

*Note 3.*—*Propior*, ‘nearer;’ *proximus*, ‘nearest,’ take a dative case, but sometimes an *accusative*.

3. The interjections *hei* and *væ* generally take a dative case; as,

*Hei mihi!*—‘Woe is me!’

*Væ misero mihi!*—‘Wretched man that I am!’

## THE DATIVE AFTER VERBS.

4. All verbs may be followed by a dative of the thing or person *to, for, or against* which anything is done.

5. The dative follows verbs that signify *advantage, disadvantage*; verbs of *comparing*, of *promising*, of *pay*

ing, of trusting, of commanding, of telling, of threatening, of being angry with, of envying, of obeying, of sparing, of succouring, of persuading, of displeasing, of healing, of favouring, of resisting; *servire*, 'to be a slave to'; *vacare*, 'to have leisure for'; and *nubere*, 'to marry' (when spoken of the woman), &c. &c.; as,

*Non potes mihi commodare nec incommodare.*

'You cannot accommodate nor incommode me.'

*Sic parvis componere magna solebam.*

'Thus was I wont to compare great things with small things.'

*Puella puero nubet*,—'The girl will marry the boy.'

*Note 1.*—Many of these verbs are active, and therefore govern the accusative.

*Note 2.*—Verbs of *comparing* are also followed by the preposition *cum* with the ablative; *inter*, and sometimes *ad*, with the accusative.

*Note 3.*—Of verbs that signify *advantage* and *disadvantage*, *juvo*, *laedo*, *delecto*, and *offendo* govern the accusative.

*Note 4.*—Of verbs that signify *command*, *tempero* and *moderor* govern the accusative or dative, with this distinction,—they govern the dative when they signify to 'set bounds to, to moderate'; the accusative, when they signify to 'regulate, to arrange.'

*Rego*, *guberno*, and *jubeo* take an accusative.

6. *Sum*, with all its compounds except *possum*, takes a dative, which denotes the person or thing for which something exists; as,

*Illi patriæ salus dulcior quàm conspectus fuit.*

'The safety of his country was dearer to him than the sight of it.'

*Nunc mihi nihil libri, nihil literæ, nihil doctrina prodest.*

‘My books, my studies, my learning, are now of no service to me.’

7. *Esse*, with a *dative* of the *person*, signifies ‘to have ;’ as,

*Est mihi liber.*

‘There is a book to me ;’ *i. e.*, ‘I have a book.’

8. The impersonal verbs *libet*, *licet*, *liquet*, *expedit*, *accidit*, *contingit*, and others of like meaning, take a *dative* case after them, except in the case of *attraction*, as has been already explained ; as,

*Licet nemini peccare*,—‘It is lawful for nobody to sin.’

9. Verbs compounded with the adverbs *benè*, *satis*, *malè* ; and with the prepositions *ad*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *præ*, *sub*, *con*, *ab*, *ante*, *de*, *e*, *post*, *pro*, *super*, and *re*, govern the *dative*, but with many exceptions.

(a.) Some of these verbs are *transitive*, and govern the *accusative only* ; as, *aggredior*, *adorior*, *alluo*, *adeo*, *convenio*, *ineo*, *invado*, *obeo*, *oppeto*, *præcedo*, and words compounded with *trans*, *circum*, and *præter*.

(b.) Some govern the *dative* or the *accusative*, with no difference of meaning ; as, *adulari*, *adjacere*, *antecedere*, *antecellere*, *anteire*, *desperare*, *illudere*, *insultare*, *incessere*, *præstare*, *præcurrere*, *præire*, *prægredi*, *præstolari*.

*Note*.—*Despêro* is also used with *de*, which governs the *ablative*. *Illudo* is also followed by *in*, with the *accusative* or *ablative*.

(c.) Very many of them may be followed by the *prepositions* they are compounded with ; as,

*Conferte hanc pacem cum illo bello.*

‘Compare this peace with that war.’

10. *Adspargo, dono, circumdo*, and several other verbs, take either a *dative* of the *person* and an *accusative* of the *thing*, or an *accusative* of the *person* and an *ablative* of the *thing*; as,

*Circumdat oppidum custodiis*; or, *circumdat custodias oppido*.

‘He surrounds the town with guards.’

11. The gerund and the participle in *dus*, and verbal adjectives in *bilis*, take a *dative*; as,

*Virtus est nobis colenda*.

‘Virtue is to be cultivated by us.’

*Nulli penetrabilis astro, lucus iners*.

‘A thick grove penetrable by no star.’

12. *Sum, do, venio, verto, mitto, fio, proficiscor*, and others of similar signification, govern *two datives*,—one of *the person*, and another to express the *purpose, effect, or destination*; as,

*Exitio est avidis mare nautis*.

‘The sea is the destruction of greedy sailors.’

*Ipse sibi impedimento erit*.

‘He will be an impediment to himself.’

*Pater annulum dono filio suo dedit*.

‘The father gave his ring as a present to his son.’

13. *Obviam*, ‘to meet;’ and *præsto*, ‘at hand,’ are used with a *dative*; as,

*Obviam ire hostibus*.

‘To go to meet the enemy.’

*Præsto esse tuis fratribus*.

‘To be ready to serve your brothers.’

## CHAPTER IX.

## THE ACCUSATIVE CASE.

1. The *accusative* is the *immediate object of the verb* or preposition, or it governs the infinitive verb. It is *joined to* all transitive verbs, whether active or deponent, *to express* the object on which the action is exerted ; as,

*Puer patrem amat*,—‘The boy loves his father.’

*Mortem non deprecor*, inquit.

‘I do not deprecate death, said he.

2. Intransitive or neuter verbs take no accusative, yet they may take a substantive of *kindred meaning* or origin in the accusative ; verbs of *tasting* or *smelling* take the *thing* in the accusative ; as,

*Servire servitutem*,—‘To serve a servitude.’

*Olere carbonem*,—‘To smell of coal.’

3. Other neuters have a transitive force to express a *transitive notion* combined with their own proper notion ; as,

*Sitire honores*,—‘To thirst after honours.’

*Horreo tenebras*,—‘I dread the dark.’

*Note*.—The *accusative of neuter pronouns* is found with verbs with which the accusative of a noun substantive would be totally wrong ; as, *hoc lætor* ; *multa alia peccans*, &c. &c.

4. These impersonals, *piget*, *pudet*, *pœnitet*, *tædet*, *miseret*, take an *accusative* of the *person feeling* ; as,

*Ignavium pœnitebit aliquando ignaviæ*.

‘The slothful man will one day repent of his sloth.’

*Tui me miseret*,—‘I pity you.’

*Decet* and *dedecet* take an *accusative*, but with the *infinitive* mood ; as,

*Oratorem irasci minime decet.*

‘It by no means becomes an orator to be angry.’

*Oratorem simulare dedecet.*

‘It doth not become an orator to feign.’

5. Verbs of *asking*, *teaching*, *clothing*, *advising*, *concealing*, &c. &c., may have two *accusatives*,—one of the *person*, and another of the *thing* ; as,

*Tu modo posce deos veniam.*

‘Do only you crave pardon of the gods.’

*Quid nunc te, ignave, literas doceam ?*

‘Why, O idle fellow, should I now teach you letters ?’

*Note*.—*Moneo* and its compounds very seldom take a double *accusative*, except with the *neuters* of pronouns. *Doceo*, ‘to give information,’ prefers the *ablative* with *de*. After *rogo* and *interrogo*, the *thing* is often placed in the *ablative* with *de*.

6. Verbs denoting *name* or *title*, *election* or *appointment*, *opinion* or *estimation*, take two *accusatives* in the *active voice* ; as,

*Romulus urbem quam condidit Romam vocavit.*

‘Romulus called the city which he founded Rome.’

*Præsto* and *præbeo*, in the sense of *show*, *prove oneself*, have two *accusatives*.

*Note*.—The *accusative* is also used with *participles passive*, in order to define more exactly the part to which the verb relates ; as, *Flores inscripti nomina regum*, ‘Flowers inscribed with the names of kings ;’ and with *adjectives* ; as, *Nudus humeros*, ‘with naked shoulders ;’ *i. e.*, ‘naked as to his shoulders ;’ in which the preposition *secundum* may be supplied.



7. The *accusative* is used to express *duration* of time and space ; as,

*Hic jam ter centum totos regnabitur annos.*

‘ Here from this time kings shall reign full three hundred years.’

*Turris centum pedes alta.*

‘ A tower a hundred feet high.’

8. A *point* or *space* of *future* time for which any arrangement is now made is put in the *accusative* with *in* ; as,

*Ad cœnam me invitavit in posterum diem.*

‘ He invited me to supper on the next day.’

9. The exact time *at which* a thing is to be done is put into the *accusative* with *ad* ; as,

*Solvere ad posterum diem*,—‘ To pay on the next day.’

10. *Abhinc* (ago), of *past* time, is joined to the *accusative* or *ablative* ; as,

*Abhinc annos* (or *annis*) *quatuor*,—‘ Four years ago.’

*Note*.—*Old*, when applied to the years of human life, is expressed by *natus*, with an *accusative* of the *time* ; as,

*Annos quinque natus*,—‘ Five years old.’

11. The names of *towns* and *small islands*, and *domus* and *rus*, are placed in the *accusative* with verbs of *motion*, or those that imply *motion*, without a *preposition* ; as,

*Legati Athenas venerunt.*

‘ Ambassadors came to Athens.’

*Domum ibo*,—‘ I will go home.’

*Rus ibo*,—‘ I will go into the country.’

*Note*.—When the name of a country and a city in it are joined with a verb of motion, the name of the country

takes *in* with the *accusative* ; as, *Legati Carthaginem in Africam trajecerunt.*

*Urbs, oppidum, locus*, in apposition to the name of a town in the *genitive*, may be in the *ablative* without *in*.

12. *Domi, humi, belli*, and *militiæ* are used in the *genitive* both with verbs of motion and rest ; as,

*Humi jacere*,—‘To lie on the ground.’

13. After the interjections *O, heu, proh*, an *accusative* of the thing or person wondered at is used ; as,

*O fallacem spem hominum !*

‘O deceitful hope of man !’

*Proh deum atque hominum fidem !*

‘Alas, the help of gods and of men !’

*Note*.—The *accusative* is sometimes used after *en* and *ecce* ; as,

*Ecce duas tibi Daphni, duoque altaria Phæbo.*

‘Behold two for you, Daphne, and two altars for Apollo.’

## CHAPTER X.

### THE VOCATIVE CASE.

1. The *vocative* is the case of the person called or spoken to. It is but a shortened form of the *nominative*, and is often joined with it in apposition ; as,

*Salve ! primus omnium parens patriæ appellate.*

‘Hail ! thou the very first who was called the father of his country.’

2. The *vocative* is sometimes governed by the interjections *O* and *proh* ; as,

*O formose puer ! nimium ne crede colori.*

O beautiful boy ! trust not too much to colour.’

*Proh sancte Jupiter !*—‘O sacred Jupiter !’

## CHAPTER XI.

## THE ABLATIVE CASE.

1. The *ablative* is the *instrumental case*, and expresses some circumstances of the action.

2. The *ablative* expresses the *means* or *instrument*, and often the *cause* or *manner*; as,

*Hi jaculis, illi certant defendere saxis.*

‘These endeavour to defend themselves with darts, those with stones.’

3. The *person* by *whom* anything is done, stands in the *ablative* with the prepositions *a* or *ab*; as, *Pempeius a Cæsare victus est.*

4. Nouns which do *not* denote *living* beings are used without the prepositions *a* or *ab* with verbs passive; as,

*Dies nubibus obscurabatur.*

‘The day was obscured by the clouds.’

5. The exact *price* for which a thing is *bought*, *sold*, *valued*, or *done*, stands in the *ablative*; as,

*Agrum mille talentis emi.*

‘I bought a field for a thousand talents.’

*Note.*—The adjectives *magno*, *parvo*, &c., are usually put by themselves, the noun denoting *price* (*pretio*) being understood; as,

*Agrum quamplurimo vendidit.*

‘He sold his field for as high a price as possible.’

Many of these adjectives stand alone in the *genitive*, especially after verbs of *valuing*, which is the *regular construction*, as has been explained in page 140.

6. The *ablative* is joined to nouns, verbs, and partici-

ples, to express a circumstance by which their meaning is more strictly determined ; as,

*Puer claudus fuit altero pede.*

‘The boy was lame of one leg.’

7. Verbs of *abounding, filling, loading, wanting, emptying of, depriving of*, govern the *ablative* ; as,

*Quorum membra vivis hominibus complent.*

‘(Images) whose limbs they fill with living men.’

*Sylla omnes suos divitiis explevit.*

‘Sylla filled all his (soldiers) with riches.’

*Note.*—Of these, *ego, impleo*, and especially *indigeo*, govern the *genitive* also ; as,

*Implentur veteris Bacchi.*

‘They are filled with old wine.’

*Quasi tu hujus indigeas patris.*

‘As if you had need of this father.’

8. *Fungor, fruor, utor* (with their compounds), *potior, vescor, dignor, glorior, lætor*, as also *supersedeo*, govern the *ablative* ; as,

*Justitiæ fungatur officiis.*

‘Let him discharge the duties of justice.’

*Ære utuntur importato*,—‘They use imported copper.’

*Haud equidem tali me dignor honore.*

‘I do not indeed think myself worthy of such honour.’

*Note.*—*Potior* takes the *genitive* when it means ‘to obtain supreme dominion over.’

9. Some verbs of *removing from, keeping at a distance from, freeing from*, and others in which a separation is involved, generally compounded with *a (ab, abs), de, e (ex)*.

are sometimes followed by the *ablative*, but usually, in prose, by one of these prepositions ; as,

*L. Brutus civitatem dominatu regio liberavit.*

‘Lucius Brutus delivered the state from the dominion of kings.’

*Tu, Jupiter, hunc a tuis aris, a tectis urbis arcebis.*

‘Do you, O Jupiter, repel this man from your altars, from the houses of the city.’

*Note.*—The *ablative* without a preposition is preferred after the following verbs :—*levare, exonerare, exsolvere, defendere.*

10. Words implying ‘*derivation*’ take the *ablative* ; as,

*Deâ natus*,—‘Born of a goddess.’

11. The *ablative* is used with the verb *sum*, or without *sum* with a substantive, to express a quality, on condition that the subject is qualified by an *adjective* ; as,

*Vir magna virtute fuit*,—‘He was a man of great virtue.’  
(You could not say *vir virtute fuit*.)

12. The adjectives *dignus, indignus, præditus, fretus, contentus, extorris*, govern the *ablative* ; as,

*Dignus es odio*,—‘Thou art worthy of hatred.’

*Mens est prædita sapientiâ.*

‘The mind is endowed with knowledge.’

*Note 1.*—*Liber, vacuus*, &c., signifying *freedom from* or *want*, govern the *ablative*, or the *ablative* with the preposition *a* or *ab*.

*Note 2.*—*Dignus* and *indignus* are very seldom followed by a *genitive*.

13. When the particle of comparison *quam* (than) is

omitted, the *ablative* is used with adjectives in the comparative degree ; as,

*Quo justior alter nec pietate fuit, nec bello major et armis.*

‘Than whom there was not another more just in piety, or greater in war and in arms.’

*Note.*—The *ablative* should not be used in this way, except where the same noun would follow *quam* in the *nominative*. The *ablative*, especially of pronouns, is sometimes, however, used instead of the *accusative* after *quam*. The *accusative* before the *infinitive* would be regular in this case. Of course, when *quam* is not omitted, the things compared will be in the same case ; as,

*Europa minor est quam Asia.*

‘Europe is less than Asia.’

14. Comparatives and superlatives are often joined with *ablatives*, expressing the excess or defect of one thing compared to another ; *tanto, quanto, eo, quo* or *hoc, paulo, multo, aliquanto*, and *multis partibus, nihilo* and *dimidio*, are *ablatives* of this kind ; as,

*Tanto brevius omne tempus, quanto felicius est.*

‘The happier any time is, the shorter it is.’

*Hibernia dimidio minor quam Britannia.*

‘Ireland (is) less by half than Britain.’

*Note.*—Sometimes a sentence of this kind is expressed by *ut quisque* with a superlative, followed by *ita* with another ; as,

*Ut quisque est puer optimus, ita difficillime esse alios improbos suscipiatur.*

‘The better a boy is, the more difficulty he has in suspecting that others are wicked.’

15. The names of *cities, towns, and small islands*, in answer to *whence?* are put in the *ablative*; as,

*Fugit Tarquinius Corintho.*

‘He fled from Corinth to Tarquinii.’

16. If the name of a *city, town, or small island*, at which anything is done or happens, be of the *plural number*, no matter of what declension, it is put in the *ablative* case; as,

*Vivit Carthagine*,—‘He lives at Carthage.’

*Thebis nritus an Argis.*

‘Brought up at Thebes or at Argos.’

*Note*.—The prepositions are often expressed in the construction of *time* and *space*; as, *Ab Epidauro Piræum adirectus*; *per totam noctem*.

17. Time *when* is put in the *ablative* without a preposition; as,

*Illo tempore*,—‘At that time.’

*Solis occasu*,—‘At the setting of the sun.’

18. Time *before*, or time *after*, is expressed by the *ablative*. *Ante* and *post* are here used as *adverbs*, except there be another *noun* or *pronoun* to be governed by them; as,

*Paucis antè diebus*,—‘A few days before.’

19. The length of time *before* the present moment is expressed by *abhinc* with the *accusative* or the *ablative*; as,

*Abhinc annos* or *annis tribus*,—‘Three years ago.’

20. In answer to the question *in what time?* *within what time?* either the *accusative* is used with the prepo-

sition *inter* or *intra*, or the noun is placed in the *ablative* with a *cardinal* or an *ordinal* number ; as,

*Græci vix decem annis unam cepisse urbem traduntur.*

‘The Greeks are said with difficulty to have taken one city in ten years.’

*Note.*—If a *cardinal* number is used, the noun will be in the plural ; if an *ordinal* number, the noun will be in the singular.

The *ablative absolute* will be explained under the *participle*.

## CHAPTER XII.

### DIVISION AND CONNECTION OF THE TENSES.

#### *Division of Tenses.*

1. The word ‘*tense*’ means ‘*time*.’ There are *three times*—Present, Past, and Future. In each time an act may be represented as *still going on* (*incomplete*), or *already finished* (*complete*) ; and hence there are six tenses,—two present, two past, and two future, as has been already explained.

#### *Connection of Tenses.*

2. The *time* of the dependent verb follows the *time* of the antecedent verb ; *i. e.*, *Like time follows like time*.

3. Similar tenses can only be made *dependent* on each other by means of the *relative* and *interrogative* pronouns and adjectives ; as, *qui, quis, qualis, quantus, tantus, &c.* ; and the particles *ut, ne, quo, quin, quominus, cum, &c.*

4. The following is the scale :—

The *Present* is followed by the *Present* and *Perfect Subjunctive* and *Periphrastic Future*.



The *Perfect* is followed by the *Present* and *Perfect Subjunctive* and *Periphrastic Future*.

The *Future* is followed by the *Present* and *Perfect Subjunctive*.

The *Second Future*, or *Future Perfect*, is followed by the *Periphrastic Future*.

The *Imperfect* is followed by the *Imperfect Subjunctive* and *Periphrastic Future*.

The *Pluperfect* is followed by the *Imperfect Subjunctive*.

The *Periphrastic Future* is followed by the *Imperfect Subjunctive*.

*Note.*—The *Perfect* is sometimes followed by the *Imperfect Subjunctive*.

## CHAPTER XIII.

### THE MOODS.—INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. The *Indicative* mood is used for all direct and independent assertions and questions. It declares *facts* as facts ; as,

*Scribo*,—‘ I write.’ *Scribis ?*—‘ Dost thou write ?’

2. The *indicative* of *sum* in past time, with the participles in *rus* and *dus*, is more usually used than the *subjunctive* ; as,

*Virtus mihi colenda erat.*

‘ Virtue should have been cultivated by me.’

3. *Quum* takes the *indicative* when it simply marks the time of anything, without implying any notion of *cause* or *occasion* ; as,

*Reliquit domum quum nox fuit.*

‘ He left his house when it was night.’

4. *Quum* requires the *indicative* when it means *since* or *after*, indicating time ; it also requires the *indicative* when it is equal to *quod*, after *gratulor*, *gaudeo*, &c. ; as,

*Gratulor tibi quum tantum vales apud eum.*

‘I congratulate you on your influence with him.’

## CHAPTER XIV.

### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

1. The Imperative mood expresses a command ; but in Latin the Subjunctive is used instead of it, to express the command in a *milder form*.

2. With the imperative, *not* must be translated by *ne*, and *nor* by *neve* ; as,

*Poetas ne irrita neve oratores.*

‘Do not irritate poets nor orators.’

*Note.*—When a prohibition is meant, either the present or perfect subjunctive may be used with *ne*.

3. There are several forms of expressing the imperative ; as, in *affirmatives*, *cura ut* (with subj.), &c. &c. ; in *negatives*, *cave ne* (with subj.), and *noli* (with inf.) ; as, *noli peccare*, or *cave ne pecces*, ‘do not sin.’

*Note.*—The *ut* and *ne* are sometimes omitted.

4. By using *velim* in the case of *affirmatives* ; and *nolim*, in the case of *negatives*, is even a *milder form* ; as,

*Velim bene oras*,—‘Pray well.’

*Nolim pecces*,—‘Do not sin.’

5. The Future Indicative is sometimes used to express a command instead of the imperative ; as,

*Hoc bene facies*,—‘Do this well.’

## CHAPTER XV.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. The Subjunctive mood is used for all *indirect* and *dependent* assertions and questions. It *declares facts* under *some condition*.

The subjunctive is used when a proposition is stated as *possible*, or *desirable*, or *indefinite*, or as *contingent* and *doubtful*.

2. The present and perfect subjunctive are used to *soften an assertion or statement*; as,

*Dixerit quispiam*,—‘Some one may say.’

3. The present and perfect subjunctive are used when the sentence implies a *supposition*, or a *supposition granted*; as,

*Peccet bonus vir*,—‘Suppose a good man sins.’

*Peccaverit bonus vir*.

‘Grant that a good man has sinned.’

4. The present and imperfect subjunctive are used in interrogative sentences that do not ask for *information*, but *assent*; as,

*Quid faciam?*—‘What am I to do?’

*Quid facerem?*—‘What was I to do?’

*Note*.—*Volo, nolo, malo*, and *possum*, are often used in the present subjunctive.

5. The conjunctions *ut, ne, quo, quin, quominus*, expressing a *purpose, object, or consequence*, require a *subjunctive*; as,

*Edimus ut vivamus*,—‘We eat that we may live.’

*Cura ne pecces*,—‘Take care that you do not sin.’

*Orat quo sit melior*,—‘He prays that he may be better.’

*Negari non potest quin sit beatus vir.*

‘It cannot be denied but he is a good man.’

*Quid obstat quominus tu sis dives?*

‘What prevents you from being rich?’

6. The following verbs require the *subjunctive mood* with *ut*,—verbs of *advising, exhorting, asking, begging, striving*, except *jubeo* (which takes the accusative with the infinitive); as,

*Enitar ut vincam*,—‘I will strive to conquer.’

7. The following verbs and phrases, used impersonally, also govern the subjunctive with *ut*:—*fit, contingat, occurrit, evenit, convenit, restat, sequitur, relinquuntur, usu venit, longe abest, prope est, caput est, superest, mos est, jus est, extremum est, reliquum est*, and sometimes *licet, opus est, necesse est*, and *accedit*, which takes *ut* or *quod*; as,

*Reliquum est ut urbem relinquas.*

‘It remains that you leave the city.’

*Note 1.*—When *ut* signifies a *purpose*, and is followed by *not* in any negative word, ‘*ne*’ must be used instead of ‘*ut*.’

*Note 2.*—When ‘*that*’ implies a *consequence*, ‘*that not*’ must be translated by ‘*ut non*’ instead of ‘*ne*.’

*Note 3.*—With verbs of *fearing*, ‘*that*’ must be translated by ‘*ne*,’ ‘*that not*’ by ‘*ut*.’ ‘*That not*’ may be also rendered by ‘*ne non*,’ which has more *force* than ‘*ut*.’

*Note 4.*—‘*That*,’ when a sentence has a comparative in it, must be translated by *quo*, which is analogous to ‘*ut eo*.’

8. *Quin* is used after verbs of *doubting*, &c., and such phrases as *minimum abesse*; *haud multum* or *procul abesse*; *quid causæ est quin?*

9. *Quominus* is used after verbs of *hindering*. Verbs

of *hindering* may also be followed by *ne*; and when a verb of *hindering* has a negative after it, by *quin*.

10. The relative *qui* (*quæ, quod*) after *est, sunt, fuit, fuerunt, &c.*, when they denote *existence only*, and are followed by no predicate but the relative; *reperio, invenio, habeo; deest, desunt, nec deest, nec desunt, nec defuere, &c.*; and *venio*,—require the *subjunctive mood*; as,

*Sunt qui putent*,—‘There are some who think.’

*Inventi sunt viri qui pro patria mori parati essent.*

‘Men have been found who were ready to die for their country.’

11. The relative *qui*, when it refers to an *interrogative negative*, or *indefinite clause preceding*,—such are *quis est? quantus est? uter est? numquis est? ecquis est? an quisquam est? an est aliquis? quotusque est? quotus est? nemo est, nullus est, unus non est, nihil est, vix ullus est, nec ullus est, vix decimus quisque est, &c. &c.*; also *quod* after *non est, nihil est*, signifying ‘there is no reason or cause why;’ and these expressions, *quid est? numquid est? &c.*,—require the *subjunctive mood*; as,

*Quis est qui non oderit protervæ adolescentiam?*

‘Who is there that does not hate petulant youth?’

*Quotusque est qui Deum ament.*

‘How few there are that love God.’

12. The relative *qui*, when it is used for *ut ego, ut tu, ut ille, ut nos, ut vos, ut illi*, through all their cases it has this force after the adjectives *dignus, indignus, idoneus, &c.*; after *tam, tantus*, and *adeo*; after *talis* and *ejusmodi*; after comparatives with *quam*; after *is sum* (if *is sum* is not followed by an adjective), when it is equivalent to *talis*, and when it expresses a purpose, requires the *subjunctive mood*; the genitive *cujus*, when it is used

for *ut mei, ut tui, ut ejus, &c.* ; and *quorum* for *ut noster, vester, eorum*, also require the *subjunctive mood* ; as,

*Voluptas non est digna ad quam sapiens respiciat.*

‘Pleasure is not deserving that a wise man should regard her.’

*Innocentia est affectio animi talis quæ noceat nemini. (C.)*

*Campani majora deliquerant, quam quibus ignosci posset (sc. majora quam ea quibus).*

*Lacedæmonii legatos Athenas miserunt qui Themistoclem absentem accusarent.*

‘The Lacedæmonians sent ambassadors to Athens to accuse Themistocles in his absence.’

(In this sentence *qui* signifies a purpose.)

13. The *relative qui*, when its clause is introduced to assign the reason of the action already announced by the antecedent clause, requires the *subjunctive mood* ; as,

*O fortunate adolescens, qui tuæ virtutis Homerum præconem inveneris !*

‘O fortunate youth, for having found Homer a herald of thy valour.’

*Note.*—To the *causal qui* is often prefixed *ut, utpote, or quippe* ; as, *ut qui, utpote qui, quippe qui*. The regular mood with these particles is *the subjunctive*. *Sallust* always, and *Livy* sometimes, use the indicative. The indicative is sometimes found with *utpote qui* ; as,

*Magna pars Fidenatium, ut qui coloni additi Romanis essent, Latine sciebant. (L.)*

14. When the *relative qui* has a force equivalent to *quanquam* or *etsi is, modo* or *dummodo*, ‘*if in,*’ ‘*though he,*’ it requires the *subjunctive mood* ; as,

*Sæpe videmus fractos pudore, qui ratione nulla vincerentur.*

‘We often see men who are overpowered by shame, though they are convinced by no reasoning.’

15. The relative *qui* after *unus* and *solus* (when they are employed to restrict what is affirmed in the relative clause exclusively to that particular subject mentioned in the antecedent clause), requires the *subjunctive* mood ; as,

*Unus es, in quo nitatur civitatis salus.*

‘Thou art the only one on whom the safety of the city rests.’

*Note.*—*Unus* and *solus*, when they are thus employed, are intended to single out from a *species* some *particular individual*.

16. The relative *qui*, when the discourse is *oblique* or *indirect* (*obliqua oratio*), requires the *subjunctive* mood.

17. To enable the student to have a clear conception of *oblique* or *indirect narration*, the following rules and remarks are given :—

When a Latin author has to report a speech, he may do it in two ways. He may either put into the speaker’s mouth the exact words that he really used,—and in this case (which is called *direct narration*) the speaker, if he has occasion to refer to himself, uses the *pronoun* of the *first person* ; he addresses the person or persons to whom he is represented by *tu* and *vos* ;—or he may only state the substance of what he said under a change of form ; and in this case (which is called *indirect* or *oblique narration*—*obliqua oratio*), the accusative *se*, or the accusative of the pronoun which refers to its antecedent, is used.

18. In *oblique narration* the verb or verbs will be in the *infinitive* mood. All the subordinate clauses that express the *original* speaker’s *words* or *sentiments*, will have their verbs in the *subjunctive* mood.

19. Questions for answer are asked in the *subjunctive* mood.

The imperative mood in *direct* narration becomes the subjunctive in *indirect* narration.

20. Questions of *appeal*, or *rhetorical* questions, are usually in the infinitive, with *interrogative pronouns* and *adverbs*; as,

*Quantum possum, te ac tua vestigia sequar.*

‘As far as I can, I will follow you and your footsteps’ (*direct narration*).

*Ait Antonius artem esse earum rerum quæ sciuntur.*

‘Antony says that art is of those things which are known’ (*indirect narration*).

*Note.*—In *indirect narration* the predicate is always either a verb of *declaring*, or some expression equivalent to and implies the *meaning* of one.

21. Questions for answer may be put in the *infinitive* or *subjunctive*.

22. *Antequam* and *priusquam*.—When the principal verb is in the *present* tense, the verb in the clause with *antequam* or *priusquam* may be in the *present indicative* or *subjunctive*.

(a.) When the *principal verb* is in a past tense, the *dependent verb* must be either in the *imperfect subjunctive* or *perfect indicative*; as,

*Pueri cœperunt ludere antequam officium finirent.*

‘The boys began to play before they finished their duty.’

(b.) When the principal verb is in the *future*, the dependent verb may be in the *second future* (or *future perfect*) or the *present subjunctive*. The *present indicative* is sometimes found; as,

*Antequam domum reliquero, a me non audies.*

‘Until I leave you will not hear from me.’



*Note.*—The *imperfect* and *pluperfect subjunctive*, and also the *perfect* and *present subjunctive*, are generally used when one thing is *declared to be necessary*, or *designed to precede another*.

23. *Dum*, *donec*, and *quoad*, equivalent to *until*, *till*, have the *subjunctive* when that up to which the action or state is to be continued, is to be represented not as a *fact*, but that which may *possibly* take place ; as,

*Expecta dum veniam*,—‘Wait till I come.’

24. *Quum* always takes the *imperfect* and *pluperfect subjunctive* when it signifies *since*, of *cause*, equal to *seeing that*, *although*, *whereas* ; as,

*Negat se bene valere, quum bene loquatur.*

‘He says that he is not well, although he speaks well.’

25. *Quod*, when it introduces the ground of another person’s *judgment* or *conduct*, requires the *subjunctive* ; as,

*Laudavit eum quod hoc fecisset.*

‘He praised him because he had done this.’

26. *Si*, &c., in conditional sentences.

(a.) When the sentence denotes *possibility* or *simple supposition*, without any idea of uncertainty, the *indicative* is used in both clauses ; as,

*Si suum patrem amat, suam matrem amat.*

‘If he loves his father, he loves his mother.’

(b.) When the sentence denotes *uncertainty*, with the prospect of decision, the *present* or *perfect subjunctive* is used in the first clause, and generally the *future indicative* in the second clause ; as,

*Si suum patrem amet, suam matrem amabit.*

‘If he loves (=should love) his father, he will love his mother.’

(c.) When the sentence denotes *uncertainty*, without *any idea* as to the prospect of *decision*, the *imperfect subjunctive* is used in both clauses ; as,

*Si suum patrem amaret, suam matrem amaret.*

‘ If he had loved his father, he would love his mother.’

(d.) When the sentence denotes *impossibility*, or belief *that the thing is not so*, the *subjunctive* is used in both clauses, the *imperfect* for *present time*, the *pluperfect* for *past time* ; as,

*Si suum patrem amavisset, suam matrem amavisset.*

‘ If he had loved *his* father, he would have loved *his* mother.’

27. *Quasi*, equal to *quam si*, ‘ *as if*,’ relating to *manner* ; *tanquam*, equal to *tam quam*, ‘ *just as if*,’ relating to *degree* ; *utinam* ! ‘ *would that* !’ *O si* ! ‘ *O that* !’ *forsitan*, ‘ *perhaps* ;’ *dummodo*, ‘ *provided only* ;’ *quasi vero*, ‘ *as if forsooth* ;’ *perinde fere est ac si*, ‘ *it is nearly the same thing as if* ;’ and *quamvis*, *licet*, and *ut*, in the sense of *although*, require the *subjunctive mood*.

28. *Nō* is used in questions that ask for information.

*Num* expects the answer ‘ *No* ;’ *Nonnō*, the answer ‘ *Yes*.’

## CHAPTER XVI.

### GERUNDS AND THE PARTICIPLE IN *DUS* (GERUNDIVE).

The *gerund* is a *verbal substantive*, but has the power of governing the case of its verb, and of expressing its action ; as,

*Studium videndi patres vestros.*

‘ The desire of seeing your fathers.’

1. Gerunds in *di* have the same construction with genitive cases, and depend upon substantives, relative adjectives, and the ablatives *causâ* and *gratiâ*; as,

*Innatus amor habendi pecuniam.*

‘A natural desire of getting money.’

2. Gerunds in *do* have the same construction with datives and ablatives; as,

*Aqua utilis est bibendo.*

‘Water is useful for drinking.’

The gerund in *do* is used as an *ablative* without a preposition, to denote the *instrument*, or with the prepositions *ab*, *de*, *ex*, and *in*, but never *sine*; as,

*Alitur vitium vixitque tegendo.*

‘Vice is nourished and lives by being concealed.’

*Diligentia in perdiscendo.*

‘Diligence in learning thoroughly.’

3. Gerunds in *dum* have the same construction with accusatives, but always require a preposition, chiefly *ad* and *inter*; as,

*Locus amplissimus ad agendum.*

‘A place very honourable to plead in.’

*Mores puerorum se inter ludendum detegunt.*

‘The characters of boys discover themselves during play.’

4. If the verb governs an accusative, the *gerundive* or *participle* in *dus* is oftener used than the *gerund*; as,

*Studium videndi patrem (gerund form).*

‘The desire of seeing your father.’

*Studium videndi patris (gerundive form).*

‘The desire of seeing your father.’

Its meaning in *passive* denotes *necessity*, *fitness*, or something *intended*.

5. When the participle in *dus* is in the neuter gender with the third person singular of *esse*, a whole conjugation may be formed to express what one *must* or *should* do. The person *by whom* is put in the *dative case*; as,

*Present.*

*Videndum est* . . . { One must see.  
I, you, we, &c., must see.

*Singular.*

*Mihi videndum est* . . I must see.

*Tibi videndum est* . . Thou must see.

*Illis videndum est* . . He must see.

*Plural.*

*Nobis videndum est* . . We must see.

*Vobis videndum est* . . Ye or you must see.

*Illis videndum est* . . They must see.

*Note.*—If the nominative means ‘*people in general*,’ it is left untranslated.

6. If a verb does not govern the accusative case, the participle in *dus* cannot be used in agreement with its substantive. But *fruor*, *fungor*, *potior*, *utor*, *vescor*, *glorior*, and a few others, are sometimes found in *agreement* with their substantives; as,

*Omnia bona ei utenda tradiderat.*

‘He had given to him all his property to be made use of.’

## CHAPTER XVII.

### SUPINES.

1. The supine in *um* has an *active* signification, and governs the case of the verb from which it is derived. It is used with verbs of motion, to express the object; as,

*Spectatum ludos veniunt*,—‘They come to see the games.’

*Note 1.*—The gerund with *ad* would be a better construction in this case than the supine.

*Note 2.*—The supine in *um* with *ire* means ‘to go about to,’ &c., denoting *effort* and *exertion*.

2. The supine in *u* has a *passive* signification, and is used after the substantives *fas*, *nefas*, and *opus*; and after the adjectives *facilis*, *honestus*, *jucundus*, *dignus*, *indignus*, *memorabilis*, *incredibilis*, *turpis*, and others of like meaning; as,

*Quod factu fœdum est, idem est et dictu turpe.*

‘That which is unseemly to be done is also indecent to be spoken.’

*Note.*—*Dignus* generally takes *qui* with the subjunctive. *Facilis* is generally found with *ad* and the gerund, or *sum* with the infinitive.

## CHAPTER XVIII.

### PARTICIPLES.

1. The participle denotes the action of the verb, and governs the same case.

2. The present participle is used to express *being in the very act of* doing something; as,

*Patri dicens mortuus est.*

‘He died in the act of speaking to his father.’

The present participle must be translated by a perfect participle (or with *quum*, with the perfect or pluperfect subjunctive), when the action expressed by it must be completed before that expressed by the verb commences.

3. The passive participle perfect and the participle in *dus* are used alone, or with a preposition, to supply the place of substantives expressing the action of the verb; the

participle in *dus* is almost limited to the idea of *necessity* or *duty*; as,

*Post urbem conditam*,—‘After the building of the city.’

*Pugnandum est*,—‘We must fight.’

*Note 1.*—The participle in *dus* also expresses *the end* or *purpose for which a thing is done*.

*Note 2.*—Deponent and neuter passive are the only verbs that have a participle of the perfect active.

4. The participle of the future in *rus* is used to denote the *purpose* with which a person acts; as,

*Abiit suum patrem oraturus*.

‘He went to beseech his father.’

5. When a participle does not refer to a *noun* or *pronoun*, already governed or governing in the sentence, it is put in the *ablative absolute*, in agreement with its own *noun*; as,

*Puer, patre occiso, domum rediit*.

‘The boy, his father being slain, returned home.’

6. A substantive which expresses the action of a verb may be used in the *ablative absolute* instead of a participle; as,

*Me duce tutus eris*.

‘If I am the leader, you will be safe.’

7. The adjective, when it has a verbal force, may be used *absolutely* instead of the participle; as,

*Dīs propitiis*,—‘The gods being propitious.’

*Note.*—When the participle of an *ablative absolute* is ‘*being*,’ it is left out, and two substantives, or a substantive and an adjective, are put in the *ablative*.

## PART IV.—PROSODY.

## CHAPTER XIX.

1. Prosody teaches the quantity of syllables.

2. The quantity of a syllable means the time that is occupied in the pronunciation of it.

3. Every syllable in Latin is said to be *long* (—) or *short* (˘), according to its quantity.

A *long syllable* occupies *twice* the time that a short syllable does.

4. Syllables which may be either short or long are called *doubtful* (˘).

## GENERAL RULES.

1. All diphthongs and contracted syllables are *long* ; as, *musæ*, *nīl*.

Exc.—The preposition *præ* is generally made *short* in composition when a *vowel follows* it ; as, *præire*, *præustus*.

2. A vowel before two consonants in the same word is *long* by *position* (*positione*) ; as, *vēntus*.

Exc.—If the second consonant be liquid, a short syllable may be made *long* ; as, *pāter*, *pātris*.

3. A vowel before two consonants, one in its own word and another at the commencement of the following word, is *long* by *position* ; as, *nēc pīētātē*.

4. One vowel before another vowel is *short* ; as, *Dēus*, *filius* ; *mēus* ; or when followed by *h* and a vowel ; as, *contrāho*. Exc.—The vowel *ē* in *ēheu* is always *long* ; the *o* in *ōhe* and the *i* in *Dīana* are doubtful ; *fio* has *ī* long (unless before *er*) ; *e* in the genitive and dative of the fifth declen-

sion, when a vowel precedes, is *long*; as, *dīdī* : *āī*, the old genitive of the first declension, is *long*; all the genitives in *ius*, except *alterius*, have *i* either *short* or *long* (*alius* is always *long*); words of Greek origin retain their respective quantities; as, *Atrīdes*, *Priamīdes*.

*Note.*—Every long syllable is determined by *position*, by *nature*, or by *authority*.

## CHAPTER XX.

### DERIVATIVE WORDS.

1. Words derived, whether by declension, conjugation, or otherwise, retain the quantities of their simples; as, *āvus*, *āvitus*, *āmator*, *āmo*.

#### EXCEPTIONS.

<i>Ārena</i> ,	from	<i>āreo</i>	<i>Ōdium</i> ,	from	<i>ōdī</i>
<i>Dīcax</i> ,	„	<i>dīco</i>	<i>Persōna</i> ,	„	<i>persōno</i>
<i>Fīdes</i> ,	„	<i>fīdo</i>	<i>Pax</i> , <i>pācis</i> ,	„	<i>pāciscor</i>
<i>Hūmanus</i> ,	„	<i>hōmo</i>	<i>Rēgula</i> ( <i>rex</i> )	} „	<i>rēgo</i>
<i>Hībernus</i> ,	„	<i>hīems</i>	<i>rēgis</i> ,		
<i>Innūba</i> , <i>pro-</i>	} „	<i>nūbo</i>	<i>Sēdes</i> ,	„	<i>sēdeo</i>
<i>nūba</i> ,			<i>Stīpendium</i> ,	„	{ <i>stīps</i> ,
<i>Lūcerna</i> ,	„	<i>lūceo</i>			<i>stīpis</i>
<i>Mācero</i> ,	„	<i>mācer</i>	<i>Tēgula</i> ,	„	<i>tēgo</i>
<i>Mōlestus</i> ,	„	<i>mōles</i>	<i>Vōmer</i> ,	„	<i>vōmo</i>
<i>Nōta</i> , <i>nōtare</i> ,	„	<i>nōtus</i>	<i>Vox</i> ( <i>vōcis</i> ),	„	<i>vōco</i>

2. *Nē* is *short* in *nēfas*, *nēque*. *Pro* in Greek words is *short*; as, *prōpheta* : *pro* is also *short* in *prōfundus*, *prōfugio*, *prōcella*, *prōficiscor*, *prōterous*, *prōnepos*, *prōfanus*; *pro* is *long* in *prōdo*, *prōmitto*.

*Se* and *dī* (for *dis*) are *long*, except in *dīrimo* and



*disertus*. *O* is short in *omitto*, *operior*. *Re* is short, except *refert*, the impersonal.

3. Adjectives in *idus* and *icus* are short, except *amicus*, *anticus*, *apricus*, *puticus*, *porticus*, and the substantives *mendicus* and *umbilicus*.

4. Adjectives in *inus* are long, except *crastinus*, *elephantinus*, &c.; *oleaginus*, *faginus*, and a few others derived from the names of trees and stones.

5. Adjectives in *ilis* and *bilis*, derived from verbs, have *i* short; as, *docilis*, *amabilis*: *ilis* derived from substantives has *i* long; as, *hostilis*.

6. Perfects and supines of two syllables have their penultima long; as, *mōvi*, *mōtum*.

Exc.—*Dēdi*, *dātum*, *bībi*, *fīdi* (from *findo*), *stēti*, *tūli*, *scīdi* (from *scindo*), *cītum*, *ītum*, *lītum*, *rātum*, *rūtum*, *sātum*, *sītum*.

7. Perfects which are formed by reduplication, as *cano*, *cēcīni*, &c., have the two first syllables short, except when the second is long by position; as, *tendo*, *tētēndi*, &c. *Pedo* and *cædo* retain the long vowel of the present; as, *pēdo*, *pepēdi*; *cædo*, *cecīdi*.

8. The imperative *dā* (give) is long, though the *ā* is short in every other part of the verb. The *o* also in *pōsui* is short, though long in *pōno*.

## CHAPTER XXI.

### FINAL SYLLABLES.

1. *A* and *e* final are short; as, *bellā*, *patrē*.

Exc. (a.) *A* is long in the ablative singular of substantives and adjectives; in Greek proper names in *as*; in the imperative of the first conjugation; and in indeclinable words; as, *frustrā*, except *itā*, *ejā*, and *quā*.

Exc. (b.) *E* is *long* in the ablative of the fifth declension, and in the imperative of the second conjugation ; as, *diē*, *monē* (*cavē*, however, is found *short*).

2. *I, o, u* final are *long* ; as, *dominī*, *sermō*, *vultū*.

Exc. (a.) Greek vocatives, as *Alexī* ; *nišī*, *quasi*, and *cuī* (when used as a dissyllable) are *short* ; *mihi*, *tibi*, *sibi*, *ibi*, *ubi* (*necubi*), *sicubi* are *common* ; *utī* has *i* long, but *utique* and *utinam* have *i* *short*.

Exc. (b.) *Cedō* (for *dīc* and *da*), *nesciō*, *duō*, *ambō*, *egō*, *citō*, *illicō*, *imō*, *quandō*, *serō*, are *short* ; *ergo*, when it means 'therefore,' is *common* ; *modō* is generally *short* ; its compounds are always so.

3. Final syllables ending in *b, d, t, l, m, n, r*, are *short*.

Exc.—*Sāl* and *sōl*, *cūr*, *fār*, *fūr*, *lār*, *nār*, *pār*.

*It* in the perfect, by syncope for *irit* or *iit*, is *long*.

4. Final syllables in *c* are *long*.

Exc.—*Nēc* and *donēc* are *short* ; *hēc*, *fēc*, and *dēc* are *common*.

5. *As, es, os* final are *long* ; as, *musās*, *sedēs*, *honōs*.

Exc. (a.) *Anās*, *anātis* ; *vās*, *vādīs* ; the Greek nominatives which make *αδοϋ*, Latin *ādīs*, in the genitive ; as, *Ilias*, *Pallas* ; and the Greek accusatives plural of the third declension, are *short*.

Exc. (b.) Nouns of the third declension in *ēs*, and *increasing*, are *short* ; as, *milēs*, *milītis*, except *abiēs*, *ariēs*, *pariēs*, *Cerēs*, and *pēs*, with its compounds ; as, *sonipēs* ; which are *long*. The nominatives plural of Greek words which increase in the genitive have *es* *short* ; as, *Troadēs*. *Penēs*, 'in the power of,' has the last syllable *short* ; *ēs*, second person singular of *sum*, is *short* ; *ēs*, second person singular of *edo*, is *long*.

Exc. (c.) *Ōs* (gen. *ossis*), *compōs*, *impōs*, are *short* ; and the Greek words and cases in *οϋ*, as *Delōs*, are also *short*.

6. *Is* and *us* final are *short*; as, *omnis*, *casus*.

Exc. (a.) *Is* is *long* in all the cases of the plural; as, *armis*; in the second person singular of verbs whose second person plural makes *itis*; as, *audis*, *possis*; in *vis* (from *volo*), and in *Samnis*, *Salamis*, &c., the *is* is also *long*.

Exc. (b.) *Us* is *long* in the genitive singular and nominative and accusative plural of the fourth declension, and in nouns of the third which have *ū* in declension; as, *palus*, &c. Greek words ending with the diphthong *ους*, of whatever case they may be (as *Panthūs*), are *long*.

## CHAPTER XXII.

### METRE.

1. Verse consists in the regular arrangement of long and short syllables. The rules for the number and succession of these syllables are called *Metre*.

2. A foot may consist of two or more syllables, but must not have more than four.

3. A spondee consists of *two long syllables* (— —).

A dactyl consists of *a long syllable followed by two short* (— · ·).

4. Verses consisting of spondees and dactyls are said to be in *dactylic metre*. A verse of six feet is called *hexameter* (ἑξ, 'six;' and μέτρος, 'a measure'), and of five feet, *pentameter* (πεντε, 'five;' μέτρος, 'a measure').

5. A *dactylic hexameter*, which is also called an *hexameter*, consists of six feet, of which the fifth should be a *dactyl*, and the sixth a *spondee*; the other places admit indifferently either of these two feet, according to the pleasure of the composer; as,

*Armă v|rūmq̄us cā|nō Trō|jæ quī|prīmūs āb|ōris.*

A *spondee*, however, is sometimes, but rarely, admitted into the fifth place; and when this is the case, a *dactyl* is commonly found in the fourth place.

6. A *dactylic pentameter* consists of five feet divided into two penthemimers; the former of these contains two feet, *dactyls* or *spondees*, and a *long* syllable. The latter penthemimer contains also two feet, which must be *dactyls*, and a *long* syllable; as,

*Īntēr|dūm lācry|māē | pōndērā | vōcīs hāb|ēnt.*

A *pentameter* subjoined to an *hexameter* forms the *elegiac verse*; so called (from *ελεγος*, 'a lamentation'), as being generally used in elegy or plaintive poetry.

## CHAPTER XXIII.

### SCANNING.

1. Scanning is the legitimate measuring of a verse into its single feet.

2. To scanning belong these figures:—*Synalœpha* or *Elision*, *Ecthipsis*, *Synæresis* or *Synizēsis*, *Diæresis*, *Systole*, *Diastole*, and *Cæsura*.

3. *Synalœpha*, or *elision* (from *συν*, 'together;' and *αλειφω*, 'to anoint'), signifies 'a commingling.' *Synalœpha* is the striking out a vowel at the end of a word before another vowel (or the letter *h*) at the beginning of the following word; as, *mod'* for *modo*.

*Pērgě mō|d' ātqu' hīnc | tē rē | gīn' ād | līmīnā | pērfer.*

4. *Ecthipsis* (from *εκ*, 'out;' and *θλιβω*, 'to press') signifies 'a forcing out.' *Ecthipsis* is absorption of *m* and the vowel which precedes it before a vowel in the following words; as,

*Sēqu' ōr|t' āntī|quā Tēu|crōr' ā | stīrpě vō|lēbat.*

5. Synæresis (from *συν*, 'together ;' and *αἶρω*, 'to take') means 'a taking together.' Synæresis is the contraction of two syllables into one ; as,

*Aūrēā | cōmpōsū|it spōn|dā, dehinc | tālīā | fātur.*

6. Diæresis (from *δια*, 'apart ;' and *αἶρω*, 'to take') means 'a taking apart.' Diæresis is when of one syllable being dissected (or the letters separated) two syllables are made ; as,

*Divēs | qūūm, dī|vēs pīc|tāi | vēstīs |t | aūri.*

7. Systole shortens a long syllable, to suit the want of the verse. Diastole lengthens a short syllable. Cæsure is when after a perfect foot a short syllable is made long at the end of a word ; as,

*Lītōrā | jāctē|tūr ōdī|is Jū|nōnis ī|nīquæ.*

Δόξα τῷ Θεῷ.

**Works by the Rev. Dr. Lingard.**

**The History of England. By John Lingard, D.D.**

The People's Edition. Handsomely printed in small octavo, uniform in size and type with the popular edition of "Alison's History of Europe." Completed in Sixty Parts, price 6d. each. Embellished with many Illustrations, from designs by HARVEY, J. DOYLE, HOWARD DUDLEY, and other artists, including a PORTRAIT and BIOGRAPHICAL MEMOIR of the HISTORIAN. Forming Ten Volumes, crown 8vo., 3s. 6d. each, cloth lettered.

This edition is reprinted from the fifth and last one, diligently revised by the author two years before his death, which was published in 1849, in ten octavo volumes. That edition embodies the substance of all the recent discoveries connected with English history, and contains a large quantity of new and important matter.

N.B.—For the convenience of persons who were prevented from subscribing to this edition during publication, it will continue to be supplied in weekly numbers, or single volumes, and may be obtained through the medium of any bookseller, or by order direct from the Publishers, who will supply it, post free, on receipt of the price of the volume or number.

**An Abridgment of the History of England, with Continuation from 1688 to the Reign of Queen Victoria; adapted for the Use of Schools. By JAMES BURKE, Esq., B.A., Barrister-at-Law. 648 pages, 12mo. bound, 5s.**

"Mr. Burke's 'Abridgment' is completely successful. We do not hesitate to pronounce the work, as a whole, one of the most valuable additions to our scanty school literature which we have met with for many years."—*Dublin Review*.

"Mr. Burke has done his work well, and the result is very satisfactory."—*Rambler*.

**The History and Antiquities of the Anglo-Saxon Church, containing an Account of its Origin, Government, Doctrines, Worship, Revenues, and Clerical and Monastic Institutions. New edition, in 2 vols. crown 8vo. cloth, 10s.**

**Observations on the Laws and Ordinances which exist in Foreign States relative to the Religious Concerns of their Roman Catholic Subjects. 8vo. 1s.**

**A New Version of the Four Gospels; with Notes Critical and Explanatory. 8vo. boards, 5s.**

**Catechetical Instructions on the Doctrines and Worship of the Catholic Church. New edition, 18mo.; 9d. cloth, 6d. wrapper.**

This work contains a short exposition of Catholic doctrine and Catholic practice, with the chief authorities on which that doctrine and practice are founded.

"A beautiful little volume, written with all that sobriety of style, power of language, and force of logic, for which the venerable author is remarkable."—*Tablet*.

**A True Account of the Gunpowder Plot;** extracted from Lingard's "History of England" and Dodd's "Church History of England," including the Notes and Documents appended to the latter. By the Rev. M. A. TIERNEY, F.R.S., F.S.A.; with Notes and Introduction, by VINDICATOR. 8vo. 2s. 6d.

**Works by His Eminence Cardinal Wiseman,**  
*Archbishop of Westminster.*

**Twelve Lectures on the Connection between Science and Revealed Religion;** with Map and Plates. Third edition, in 2 vols. small 8vo. cloth lettered, 8s.

**Lectures on the Principal Doctrines and Practices** of the Catholic Church, delivered at St. Mary's, Moorfields, during the Lent of 1836. Second edition, entirely revised and corrected by the Author. Two vols. in one. 12mo. cloth, 3s. 6d.

**The Real Presence of the Body and Blood of Our Lord Jesus Christ in the Blessed Eucharist,** proved from Scripture. In eight Lectures, delivered in the English College, Rome. Second edition, 12mo. cloth, 3s. 6d.

**Four Lectures on the Offices and Ceremonies of Holy Week,** as performed in the Papal Chapels, delivered in Rome in the Lent of 1837. Illustrated with nine Engravings, and a Plan of the Papal Chapels. 8vo. cloth, 4s.

**A Reply to Dr. Turton, the British Critic, and others,** on the Catholic Doctrine of the Eucharist. 8vo. 3s. 6d.

**Essays on Various Subjects.** 3 vols. 8vo. cloth lettered. Published at £2. 2s., reduced to £1. 10s.

"These admirable volumes will entertain, instruct, and edify Catholics wherever the English language is spoken."—*Tablet*.

**The Lives of St. Alphonsus Liguori, St. Francis de Girolamo, St. John Joseph of the Cross, St. Pacificus of San Severino, and St. Veronica Giuliani,** whose canonization took place on Trinity Sunday, May 26, 1839. Edited by CARDINAL WISEMAN. Second edition, 18mo. cloth lettered, 2s.

**Lives of the Fathers, Martyrs, and other principal Saints;** compiled from Original Monuments and other Authentic Records; illustrated with the Remarks of judicious modern Critics and Historians. By the Rev. ALBAN BUTLER. Including the account of the Life and Writings of the Rev. Alban Butler, by CHARLES BUTLER, Esq.; and an Appendix containing General Indexes, Chronological Tables, &c. The original stereotype edition, well printed, in large type, in 12 vols. demy 8vo. cloth lettered, only £2. 2s.

The same, illustrated with above 40 plates, fine early impressions, only £2. 12s. 6d.

\* \* \* This edition will be re-issued in weekly and monthly parts at equally low prices, to render this esteemed edition of more easy access to the Catholic public.

**The Holy Bible, translated from the Latin Vulgate,** diligently compared with the Hebrew, Greek, and other Editions, in divers languages : the Old Testament, first published by the English College at Douay, A.D. 1609 ; and the New Testament, first published by the English College at Rheims, A.D. 1582. With Annotations, References, and an Historical and Chronological Index. Published with the approbation of the Right Rev. Dr. DENVIR, Bishop of Down and Connor. Beautifully printed in super royal 32mo. embossed roan, sprinkled edges, 2s. 6d. ; or 3s. gilt edges.

The same edition, illustrated with Twelve beautiful Engravings from the best Masters, bound in French morocco, 4s. 6d. ; or extra gilt, 5s. 6d. The same in Turkey morocco, 6s. ; or extra gilt, 7s. ; also kept in various styles of elegant binding, suitable for presents.

**The Holy Bible, translated from the Latin Vulgate,** with Annotations, References, and an Historical and Chronological Index. Stereotype edition, with Episcopal Approbation. On fine paper, royal 8vo. morocco, 15s.

Another edition, handsomely printed on fine paper, imperial 8vo. with plates. Handsomely bound in calf extra, £1. 1s.

**Reeve's History of the Bible.** Best edition, illustrated with 233 Wood-engravings. 12mo. 2s. 8d.

**The New Testament, with Episcopal Approbation.** Stereotype edition, 12mo. bound, 1s. 6d.

Another edition, 18mo. bound, 1s. ; Cape morocco, gilt, 2s. 6d.

**The New Testament, with Annotations from Drs. WITHAM and CHALLONER.** 4to. large type, with Illustrations, printed at Manchester, 1816, cloth gilt, only 5s.

**The Pictorial New Testament, illuminated after** Original Drawings, by W. H. HEWETT. Royal 8vo. cloth gilt, 12s. 6d.

**A New Version of the Four Gospels ; with Notes, Critical and Explanatory.** By the Rev. Dr. LINGARD. 8vo. boards, 5s.

**The Bible : its Use and Abuse ; or, an Inquiry into the Results of Respective Doctrines of the Catholic and Protestant Churches, relative to the interpretation of the Word of God.** By the Rev. PAUL MACLACHLAN. Fcap. 8vo. cloth, 2s. 6d.

**The Holy Scriptures ; their Origin, Progress, Transmission, Corruptions, and True Character.,** 18mo. cloth, 1s. 6d.

"Thinkest thou that thou understandest what thou readest? Who said : I can I, unless some man show me?"—*Acts viii. 30, 31.*



